

CERAMICS



Jessica Fong
University of the Pacific

Ceramics

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (<https://LibreTexts.org>) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide an accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden born from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.



LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by [NICE CXone Expert](#) and was supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptations contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at <https://LibreTexts.org>.

This text was compiled on 11/27/2025

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

1: Introduction

- 1.1: World of Ceramics
 - 1.1.1: Asia
 - 1.1.1.1: East Asia
 - 1.1.1.1.1: China
 - 1.1.1.1.2: Japan
 - 1.1.1.1.3: Korea
 - 1.1.1.2: Southeast Asia
 - 1.1.1.2.1: Vietnam
 - 1.1.1.2.2: Thailand
 - 1.1.1.3: South Asia
 - 1.1.1.3.1: India
 - 1.1.1.3.2: Pakistan
 - 1.1.1.4: Central Asia
 - 1.1.1.4.1: Uzbekistan
 - 1.1.1.5: Middle East / West Asia
 - 1.1.1.5.1: Iran
 - 1.1.1.5.2: Iraq
 - 1.1.1.5.3: Turkey
 - 1.1.1.5.4: Syria
 - 1.1.1.5.5: Lebanon
 - 1.1.2: North America
 - 1.1.2.1: Miwok
 - 1.1.2.2: Mimbres
 - 1.1.3: South America
 - 1.1.3.1: Colima
 - 1.1.3.2: Peru
 - 1.1.3.3: Olemec
 - 1.1.4: Western Europe
 - 1.1.4.1: Celtic
 - 1.1.4.2: United Kingdom
 - 1.1.4.2.1: Prehistoric
 - 1.1.4.3: Vienna / Austria
 - 1.1.5: Northern Europe
 - 1.1.6: Eastern Europe
 - 1.1.7: Southern Europe
 - 1.1.7.1: Etruscan
 - 1.1.8: North Africa
 - 1.1.8.1: Egypt
 - 1.1.9: Africa

- 1.1.9.1: Kongo
- 1.1.10: Australia/ New Zealand
- 1.2: Evolution of Ceramic Techniques
- 1.3: Ceramics and Cultural Identity
- 1.4: Contemporary Ceramic Art

2: Studio Foundation

- 2.1: Setting Up Your Studio Space
- 2.2: Essential Tools and Their Uses
- 2.3: Health and Safety in the Ceramic Studio
- 2.4: Understanding Kilns- Types and Uses
- 2.5: Troubleshooting

3: Clay The Ceramic Medium

- 3.1: Types of Clay and Their Properties
- 3.2: Preparing and Recycling Clay
- 3.3: The Science of Clay- From Plasticity to Vitreousness
- 3.4: Storing and Reclaiming Clay
- 3.5: Troubleshooting

4: Hand-Building Skills

- 4.1: Pinching- The Most Ancient Technique
- 4.2: Coil Construction- Pottery and Sculpture
- 4.3: Slab Techniques- Functional and Sculptural Forms
- 4.4: Advanced Hand-building Techniques
- 4.5: Texturing and Surface Embellishment

5: The Potter's Wheel

- 5.1: Introduction to the Wheel
- 5.2: Centering- The Foundation of Wheel Throwing
- 5.3: Creating Basic Forms- Cylinders, Bowls, Plates
- 5.4: Troubleshooting

6: Advanced Forms on the Wheel

- 6.1: Advanced Forms- Lidded Containers, Teapots, Vases

7: Surface Design Techniques

- 7.1: Engobes and Slip Decoration
 - 7.1.1: Underglazes
 - 7.1.2: Oxides and Stains
- 7.2: Carving and Incising
- 7.3: Glaze Application Techniques
- 7.4: Using Wax Resist and Other Masking Techniques
- 7.5: Troubleshooting

8: Understanding Glazes

- 8.1: Introduction to Glaze Chemistry
 - 8.1.1: Glazy.org
 - 8.1.2: Glaze Logbook
- 8.2: Glaze Characteristics and Types
- 8.3: Triaxial Glaze Testing
- 8.4: Formulating Glazes for Specific Effects
- 8.5: Making and Using Glaze Test Tiles
- 8.6: Keeping a Kiln Log
- 8.7: Troubleshooting

9: The Firing Process

- 9.1: Overview of Kiln Firing
- 9.2: Bisque Firing- Purpose and Process
- 9.3: Glaze Firing- Understanding Temperatures and Atmospheres
 - 9.3.1: Reduction
- 9.4: Special Firing Techniques- Pit, Salt, and Wood Firing
- 9.5: Types of Kilns and Locations
- 9.6: Troubleshooting

10: Design and Aesthetics

- 10.1: Principles of Ceramic Design
- 10.2: Color in Ceramics- Glazes and Stains
- 10.3: Texture and Pattern in Design
- 10.4: The Critique Process- Evaluating Your Work
- 10.5: Signing Your Work
- 10.6: Life-Long Learning
 - 10.6.1: Physical Health
 - 10.6.2: Cognitive Skills
- 10.7: Troubleshooting

11: The Professional Ceramic Artist

- 11.1: Documenting and Photographing Ceramics
- 11.2: Strategies for Selling Your Work
- 11.3: Writing an Effective Artist Statement
- 11.4: Networking and Building Your Presence in the Ceramic Community
- 11.5: Residencies and Educational Opportunities
 - 11.5.1: Notable Ceramics-Related Residencies in the US
 - 11.5.2: Notable International Ceramics-Related Residencies
 - 11.5.3: New Page

12: Digital Technologies in Ceramic Art

- 12.1: Designing with CAD and Rhino for Ceramics
- 12.2: 3D Printing with Clay Extrusions
- 12.3: Integrating Digital Fabrication Techniques
- 12.4: Troubleshooting

13: Advanced Sculptural Techniques in Ceramics

- 13.1: Sculpting with Paper Clay
- 13.2: Using Soft Armatures in Ceramic Sculpture
- 13.3: Incorporating Hard Armatures
- 13.4: Tar Paper Form Templates
- 13.5: Troubleshooting

14: Ceramics in Environmental and Humanitarian Solutions

- 14.1: Ceramic Water Filtration Systems
- 14.2: The Resurgence of Olla Water Vessels
- 14.3: Troubleshooting

15: Innovative Uses of Ceramics

- 15.1: Ceramics in Modern Technology and Industry
- 15.2: Sustainable and Eco-Friendly Ceramic Practices
- 15.3: Troubleshooting

16: Beyond the Studio

- 16.1: Ceramics in Education- Teaching and Workshops
- 16.2: Ceramics in the Digital Age- Online Communities and Resources
- 16.3: Sustainability in Ceramics- Practices and Considerations
- 16.4: The Future of Ceramics- Trends and Innovations
- 16.5: Challenges

17: The Craft and Regional Ceramics Movements After 1920

- 17.1: The Evolution of the Craft Movement
- 17.2: Regional Ceramics Movements
- 17.3: Brutalism and Ceramics
 - 17.3.1: Introduction to Contemporary Ceramics
 - 17.3.2: Legacy and Influence
 - 17.3.2.1: Influence on Ceramics and the Art World
 - 17.3.3: Mingei Movement and Its Principles
 - 17.3.3.1: Influence on Western Ceramics
 - 17.3.3.2: Legacy and Influence
- 17.4: Women in Contemporary Ceramics
 - 17.4.1: Impact on Women Artists and the Ceramics Field

18: Artists and Craftspeople

- 18.1: Online Platforms
- 18.2: Adam Field
- 18.3: Kate Malone
- 18.4: Ayumi Horie
- 18.5: The Haas Brothers (Simon and Nikolai Haas)
- 18.6: Ben Carter
- 18.7: Julia Galloway
- 18.8: Jessica Putnam-Phillips

- 18.9: Grayson Perry
- 18.10: Roberto Lugo
- 18.11: Chris Staley
- 18.12: Molly Hatch
- 18.13: Chris Casey
- 18.14: Forrest Lesch-Middelton
- 18.15: Lindsay Oesterritter
- 18.16: Tim See
- 18.17: Sean O'Connell
- 18.18: Lauren Sandler
- 18.19: Naomi Clement
- 18.20: Jen Allen

19: Curators, Critics, and Collectors Impact

- 19.1: Access and Representation
- 19.2: Garth Clark
- 19.3: Mark Delvecchio
- 19.4: Peter Held
- 19.5: Garth Johnson
- 19.6: Ulysses Grant Dietz
- 19.7: Nevica Project
- 19.8: Leslie Ferrin Gallery
- 19.9: Clay AKAR
- 19.10: Influence on the Ceramics and Art World
- 19.11: Jerry Saltz
- 19.12: Roberta Smith

[Index](#)

[Glossary](#)

[Detailed Licensing](#)

[Detailed Licensing](#)

Licensing

A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in [Back Matter/Detailed Licensing](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

1: Introduction

1.1: World of Ceramics

1.1.1: Asia

1.1.1.1: East Asia

1.1.1.1.1: China

1.1.1.1.2: Japan

1.1.1.1.3: Korea

1.1.1.2: Southeast Asia

1.1.1.2.1: Vietnam

1.1.1.2.2: Thailand

1.1.1.3: South Asia

1.1.1.3.1: India

1.1.1.3.2: Pakistan

1.1.1.4: Central Asia

1.1.1.4.1: Uzbekistan

1.1.1.5: Middle East / West Asia

1.1.1.5.1: Iran

1.1.1.5.2: Iraq

1.1.1.5.3: Turkey

1.1.1.5.4: Syria

1.1.1.5.5: Lebanon

1.1.2: North America

1.1.2.1: Miwok

1.1.2.2: Mimbres

1.1.3: South America

1.1.3.1: Colima

1.1.3.2: Peru

1.1.3.3: Olemec

1.1.4: Western Europe

1.1.4.1: Celtic

1.1.4.2: United Kingdom

1.1.4.2.1: Prehistoric

1.1.4.3: Vienna / Austria

1.1.5: Northern Europe

1.1.6: Eastern Europe

1.1.7: Southern Europe

1.1.7.1: Etruscan

1.1.8: North Africa

1.1.8.1: Egypt

1.1.9: Africa

[1.1.9.1: Kongo](#)

[1.1.10: Australia/ New Zealand](#)

[1.2: Evolution of Ceramic Techniques](#)

[1.3: Ceramics and Cultural Identity](#)

[1.4: Contemporary Ceramic Art](#)

This page titled [1: Introduction](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

SECTION OVERVIEW

1.1: World of Ceramics

1.1.1: Asia

1.1.1.1: East Asia

1.1.1.1.1: China

1.1.1.1.2: Japan

1.1.1.1.3: Korea

1.1.1.2: Southeast Asia

1.1.1.2.1: Vietnam

1.1.1.2.2: Thailand

1.1.1.3: South Asia

1.1.1.3.1: India

1.1.1.3.2: Pakistan

1.1.1.4: Central Asia

1.1.1.4.1: Uzbekistan

1.1.1.5: Middle East / West Asia

1.1.1.5.1: Iran

1.1.1.5.2: Iraq

1.1.1.5.3: Turkey

1.1.1.5.4: Syria

1.1.1.5.5: Lebanon

1.1.2: North America

1.1.2.1: Miwok

1.1.2.2: Mimbres

1.1.3: South America

1.1.3.1: Colima

1.1.3.2: Peru

1.1.3.3: Olemec

1.1.4: Western Europe

1.1.4.1: Celtic

1.1.4.2: United Kingdom

1.1.4.2.1: Prehistoric

1.1.4.3: Vienna / Austria

[1.1.5: Northern Europe](#)

[1.1.6: Eastern Europe](#)

[1.1.7: Southern Europe](#)

[1.1.7.1: Etruscan](#)

[1.1.8: North Africa](#)

[1.1.8.1: Egypt](#)

[1.1.9: Africa](#)

[1.1.9.1: Kongo](#)

[1.1.10: Australia/ New Zealand](#)

This page titled [1.1: World of Ceramics](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

SECTION OVERVIEW

1.1.1: Asia

1.1.1.1: East Asia

1.1.1.1.1: China

1.1.1.1.2: Japan

1.1.1.1.3: Korea

1.1.1.2: Southeast Asia

1.1.1.2.1: Vietnam

1.1.1.2.2: Thailand

1.1.1.3: South Asia

1.1.1.3.1: India

1.1.1.3.2: Pakistan

1.1.1.4: Central Asia

1.1.1.4.1: Uzbekistan

1.1.1.5: Middle East / West Asia

1.1.1.5.1: Iran

1.1.1.5.2: Iraq

1.1.1.5.3: Turkey

1.1.1.5.4: Syria

1.1.1.5.5: Lebanon

This page titled [1.1.1: Asia](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

SECTION OVERVIEW

1.1.1.1: East Asia

East Asia

- **China:**
 - Prehistoric: Yangshao and Longshan pottery.
 - Historic: Tang sancai, Song dynasty celadons, Ming blue-and-white porcelain.
 - Contemporary: Porcelain sculpture and conceptual ceramics.
- **Japan:**
 - Prehistoric: Jomon pottery.
 - Historic: Raku ware, Hagi ware, Oribe ware.
 - Contemporary: Sodeisha movement (non-functional ceramics).
- **Korea:**
 - Prehistoric: Mumun pottery.
 - Historic: Goryeo celadon, Joseon buncheong and white porcelain.
 - Contemporary: Innovations in celadon and buncheong styles.

1.1.1.1.1: China

1.1.1.1.2: Japan

1.1.1.1.3: Korea

This page titled [1.1.1.1: East Asia](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.1.1.1: China

China

Characteristics: Known for porcelain, celadon, stoneware; blue and white porcelain.

Periods: Tang Dynasty, Song Dynasty, Ming Dynasty.

Locations: Jingdezhen ("Porcelain Capital" of China).

ca. 2650–2350 BCE

Jar (Hu)

China



Bowl with “Hare’s Fur” Decoration

China

Title: Jar (Hu)

Period: Neolithic, Majiayao culture, Banshan phase

Date: ca. 2650–2350 BCE

Culture: China

Medium: Earthenware with painted decoration

late 6th–early 7th century

Bottle

On view at The Met Fifth Avenue in Gallery 204

Produced during the flowering of ceramic traditions in north China in the sixth century, this elegant bottle illustrates the northern adoption, and adaptation, of the southern celadon tradition.



10th–11th century

Bottle

China



Named after a prefecture in Hebei Province in north China, Ding wares were made from the eighth to the thirteenth or fourteenth century, and were popular at the Northern Song (960–1127) court. The shape of this base, which most likely derives from a silver piece, is extraordinarily difficult to make because the neck is so long and slender.

Bottle

Period: Northern Song dynasty (960–1127)

Date: 10th–11th century

Culture: China

Medium: Porcelain with ivory glaze (Ding ware)

11th–12th century



12th Century

Jar with Handles



Jar with Handles

Period: late Northern Song (960–1127)–Jin (1115–1234) dynasty

Culture: China

Medium: Stoneware with applied white slip ribs and black glaze (Cizhou ware)

14th century

Bottle with abstract flowers and leaves



China

Yuan dynasty (1271–1368)

Date: 14th century

Culture: China

Medium: Stoneware painted in brown on white slip under transparent glaze (Cizhou ware)

15th century

Saucer with pomegranates and peaches

China



Ming dynasty (1368–1644)

Date: 15th century

Culture: China

Medium: Porcelain painted in underglaze cobalt blue (Jingdezhen ware)

15th century

mid-15th century



Jar with Winged Animals over Waves

China

The theme of winged animals, in this case a horse, an elephant, a mongoose, a fish, a rabbit, and two cervids, was most likely inspired by the extraordinary court-sponsored maritime expeditions of the early fifteenth century, in which a Chinese fleet, under the direction of Zheng He (1371–1433), reached the coast of Africa.

Jar with Winged Animals over Waves

Period: Ming dynasty (1368–1644)

Date: mid-15th century

Culture: China

Medium: Porcelain with cobalt blue under a transparent glaze (Jingdezhen ware)

Early 18th century

Gourd-shaped vase with gourds on vines and bats



Beyond the appeal of its sinuous form and elegant blue-and-white decoration, this gourd-shaped vase would have been treasured for the layers of auspicious meaning encoded in its decoration. The image of gourds on vines is a rebus, or visual word puzzle, for “fortune and prosperity through ten thousand generations” (fulu wandai), while the combination of bats and gourds forms a second rebus for “good fortune and wealth” (fulu).

Gourd-shaped vase with gourds on vines and bats

Period: Qing dynasty (1644–1911), Kangxi period (1662–1722)

Culture: China

Medium: Porcelain painted in underglaze cobalt blue (Jingdezhen ware)

China

early 18th century

Plate with Dragon and Waves



China

first half of the 18th century

The chaos that marked the transition from the Ming to the Qing dynasty in the mid-seventeenth century spurred European demand for Japanese porcelains, which began to be exported in significant numbers. As production resumed in China, Chinese potters sometimes re-created the Japanese styles—characterized by the dense pattering on the rim—that the European markets desired.

mid-18th century

Cup with floral scrolls

China

On view at The Met Fifth Avenue in Gallery 221

The practice of using painted enamels and gilding to imitate the appearance of cloisonné began during the Qianlong reign, a period in which the imitative capacities of enamels were deployed to reproduce a variety of media. Such playful emulations were the result of technical mastery and experimentation, and were encouraged at the Qing imperial workshops.

Qing dynasty (1644–1911), Qianlong mark and period (1736–95)

Date: mid-18th century

Culture: China

Medium: Porcelain painted in overglaze polychrome enamels and gold (Jingdezhen ware)

Mid-18th Century

Vase with dragon amid clouds



China

mid-18th century

Qing dynasty (1644–1911)

Date: mid-18th century

Culture: China

Medium: Porcelain with carved decoration under celadon glaze (Jingdezhen ware)

This page titled [1.1.1.1.1: China](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.1.1.2: Japan

Characteristics: Wood-fired ceramics, tea bowls, emphasis on wabi-sabi aesthetics.

Periods: Jomon, Heian, Edo periods.

Locations: Mashiko, Bizen, Shigaraki.



Ewer (Suichū) with Cherry Blossoms and Picnic Curtain (Metropolitan Museum of Art, NY)

Japan

early 17th century

In the tea ceremony, this type of ewer (suichū) is used to replenish the water jar, which holds water for rinsing tea bowls and filling the iron kettle. The copper-green glaze and dark brown graphic design are characteristic features of Oribe ware. Depicted on the lower half of the vessel is a curtain of the type used to surround the picnic area selected for cherry blossom viewings. Cherry blossoms are painted in iron brown underglaze and white clay slip.

Recumbent bottle (yokobe)

Japan



late 6th century

Not on view

This yokobe, or barrel-shaped vessel with a neck on its side, was produced to store liquids, primarily sake. It was coil-built in sections and smoothed by being beaten with wood tools. Fired standing on its side in a high-temperature, Korean-style single-chamber tunnel kiln (anagama), it acquired its streaked surface from falling ash.



Lion-dog (Shishi)

Japan

early 19th century

Lion-dog (Shishi)

Period: Edo period (1615–1868)

Date: early 19th century

Culture: Japan

Medium: Porcelain with incised decoration under celadon glaze (Hizen ware: Hirado type)

This page titled [1.1.1.1.2: Japan](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.1.1.3: Korea

Characteristics: Celadon with inlay technique (sanggam), white porcelain.

Periods: Goryeo and Joseon Dynasties.

Locations: Gangjin kilns.



Dragon jar

Korea



second half 18th century

On view at The Met Fifth Avenue in Gallery 233

Porcelain jars painted with cobalt-blue dragons were popular from the seventeenth through the nineteenth century. Many were used as flower vases in official court ceremonies. Originally associated with water, dragons were also imperial emblems throughout East Asia. The two four-clawed dragons chasing flaming jewels on this piece embody the dynamic strength of the mythical beast. At the same time, dragons are seen as auspicious, welcoming creatures; the pair seen here, with their amusing faces, reflects the notion that they are not always to be feared.

Moon jar

Korea

second half 18th century

On view at The Met Fifth Avenue in Gallery 233

Moon jars have become national icons, inspiring the shape of the 2018 Pyeongchang Winter Olympic cauldron and garnering record-breaking prices at auction. Thus it may be surprising that during the Joseon period these vessels were utilitarian objects, referred to as daeho (literally “big jar”), and fell out of vogue in the 1800s. Rediscovered in the twentieth century and called moon jars for their evocative forms, they are adored by many for unintentional features acquired during firing, such as asymmetry or the final hue. Because moon jars are made by joining two hemispheres, each example has a unique shape.

Moon jar

Period: Joseon dynasty (1392–1910)

Date: second half 18th century

Culture: Korea

Medium: Porcelain

This page titled [1.1.1.1.3: Korea](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

SECTION OVERVIEW

1.1.1.2: Southeast Asia

Southwest Asia

- **Vietnam:**
 - Prehistoric: Đông Sơn culture pottery.
 - Historic: Champa ceramics, Vietnamese blue-and-white porcelain.
 - Contemporary: Export-oriented and artistic ceramics.
- **Thailand:**
 - Historic: Sukhothai and Sawankhalok wares.
 - Contemporary: Functional and decorative ceramics.

1.1.1.2.1: Vietnam

1.1.1.2.2: Thailand

This page titled [1.1.1.2: Southeast Asia](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.1.2.1: Vietnam

Characteristics: High-fired ceramics, cobalt blue underglaze.

Periods: Ly and Tran Dynasties.

Ewer in the Form of a Phoenix

Vietnam



ca. 15th–16th century

On view at The Met Fifth Avenue in Gallery 250

Fanciful shapes, including vessels in the form of birds, animals, and human figures, as well as abstract designs characterize blue-and-white and other ceramic wares produced in Vietnam for domestic use and export in the fifteenth and sixteenth century. An elaborate crest caps the pronounced head of this phoenix-shaped ewer. His detailed wings cling to the sides of the body, which is decorated with scattered featherlike clumps painted in underglaze blue. A whimsical two-part handle is placed along the back. This is one of several such vessels found in Indonesia, an active market for Chinese and Southeast Asian wares. In addition to figural and other vessels, the Vietnamese kilns also produced tiles for the decoration of mosques and other Indonesian buildings.

This page titled [1.1.1.2.1: Vietnam](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.1.2.2: Thailand

Characteristics: Sawankhalok stoneware, bencharong multi-colored ceramics.

Periods: Sukhothai period.

Vessel in the form of an Elephant with Rider



Thailand

14th–mid-16th century

Vessel in the form of an Elephant with Rider

Date: 14th–mid-16th century

Culture: Thailand

Medium: Earthenware with underglaze iron-brown decoration (Sawankhalok ware)



Anthropomorphic Bottle in Human Form

Thailand

11th century

Anthropomorphic Bottle in Human Form

Period: Angkor period

Date: 11th century

Culture: Thailand

Medium: Stoneware



Covered Lime Pot in the Form of a Rabbit

Thailand

second half of the 12th century

Covered Lime Pot in the Form of a Rabbit

Period: Angkor period

Date: second half of the 12th century

Culture: Thailand

Medium: Stoneware

This page titled [1.1.1.2.2: Thailand](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

SECTION OVERVIEW

1.1.1.3: South Asia

South Asia

- **India:**
 - Prehistoric: Indus Valley pottery.
 - Historic: Black and red ware, glazed Islamic pottery.
 - Contemporary: Terracotta art, studio pottery.

1.1.1.3.1: India

1.1.1.3.2: Pakistan

This page titled [1.1.1.3: South Asia](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.1.3.1: India

Characteristics: Terracotta figures, low-fired earthenware.

Periods: Indus Valley Civilization, Maurya Empire.

This page titled [1.1.1.3.1: India](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.1.3.2: Pakistan

Characteristics: Indus Valley ceramics; painted pottery.

Periods: Mehrgarh and Harappan periods.

This page titled [1.1.1.3.2: Pakistan](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

SECTION OVERVIEW

1.1.1.4: Central Asia

Central Asia

- **Uzbekistan:**
 - Historic: Timurid-era tiles and pottery (Samarkand and Bukhara).
 - Contemporary: Hand-painted ceramics.

1.1.1.4.1: Uzbekistan

This page titled [1.1.1.4: Central Asia](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.1.4.1: Uzbekistan

Characteristics: Decorative tiles, ceramic vessels with Islamic motifs.

Locations: Samarkand, Khiva.

This page titled [1.1.1.4.1: Uzbekistan](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

SECTION OVERVIEW

1.1.1.5: Middle East / West Asia

Middle East / West Asia

- **Iran:**
 - Prehistoric: Painted pottery of Susa.
 - Historic: Lustreware, blue-and-white Safavid ceramics.
 - Contemporary: Modern ceramic sculpture.
- **Iraq:**
 - Prehistoric: Ubaid culture pottery.
 - Historic: Abbasid period lusterware.
 - Contemporary: Art pottery reflecting traditional forms.
- **Turkey:**
 - Historic: Iznik tiles and ceramics.
 - Contemporary: Artistic reinterpretations of Ottoman designs.
- **Israel and Palestine:**
 - Prehistoric: Chalcolithic pottery.
 - Historic: Roman and Byzantine pottery.
 - Contemporary: Ceramics blending cultural influences.

1.1.1.5.1: Iran

1.1.1.5.2: Iraq

1.1.1.5.3: Turkey

1.1.1.5.4: Syria

1.1.1.5.5: Lebanon

This page titled [1.1.1.5: Middle East / West Asia](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.1.5.1: Iran

Characteristics: Lustreware, mina'i painted ceramics.

Periods: Seljuk and Safavid periods.

This page titled [1.1.1.5.1: Iran](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.1.5.2: Iraq

Characteristics: Islamic golden age pottery, colorful glazes.

Locations: Samarra and Baghdad production centers.

This page titled [1.1.1.5.2: Iraq](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.1.5.3: Turkey

Characteristics: Iznik pottery, intricate floral motifs.

Periods: Ottoman Empire.

This page titled [1.1.1.5.3: Turkey](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.1.5.4: Syria

Characteristics: Tin-glazed earthenware, early Islamic ceramics.

This page titled [1.1.1.5.4: Syria](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.1.5.5: Lebanon

Characteristics: Phoenician terracotta artifacts, early glass-blown items.

This page titled [1.1.1.5.5: Lebanon](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

SECTION OVERVIEW

1.1.2: North America

1.1.2.1: Miwok

1.1.2.2: Mimbre

This page titled [1.1.2: North America](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.2.1: Miwok

Characteristics: Basketry; limited pottery production, focus on functional forms.

Location: Central California.

This page titled [1.1.2.1: Miwok](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.2.2: Mimbre

Characteristics: Black-on-white pottery with intricate animal and human designs.

Period: 1000–1150 CE.

This page titled [1.1.2.2: Mimbre](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.3: South America

This page titled [1.1.3: South America](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.3.1: Colima

Characteristics: Red-slipped ceramic figures and vessels.

Location: Western Mexico.

This page titled [1.1.3.1: Colima](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.3.2: Peru

Peru

Characteristics: Moche stirrup-spout vessels, intricate figural forms.

Periods: Moche, Nazca cultures.

Drum



Nasca artist(s)

Date: 100–400 CE

Geography: Peru, South Coast

Culture: Nasca

Medium: Ceramic, slip

Nasca artist(s)

100–400 CE

Not on view

Ceramic drums with central, bulging sounding chambers were made in southern Peru at the turn of the first millennium. Among the most elaborately finished are those of Nasca style. They were surfaced with the many rich colors commonly used on Nasca ceramic vessels. A favored form was one in which a fat-bodied figure was worked into the shape of the instrument, the rotund body spreading out equally on all sides and the legs drawn up in the front. The figure is depicted atop the wide mouth of the drum, over which a skin would have been stretched. The image is symbolically complex; a snake emerges from under the figure's chin and a killer whale outlines each eye. The killer whales are in profile and show the "two-tone" color differentiation normally given them in Nasca depictions. A headband is wound around the head and tied to form a hornlike projection on the forehead. In back, the figure's hair is shown as serpents with long tongues.

This page titled [1.1.3.2: Peru](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.3.3: Olemec

Characteristics: Earliest known Mesoamerican civilization; ceramic figurines.

This page titled [1.1.3.3: Olemec](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

SECTION OVERVIEW

1.1.4: Western Europe

Western Europe

- **United Kingdom:**
 - Prehistoric: Grooved ware (Neolithic), Beaker culture pottery.
 - Historic: Staffordshire pottery (18th century), Wedgwood ceramics.
 - Contemporary: Studio pottery movement (Bernard Leach, Lucie Rie).
- **France:**
 - Prehistoric: Chassey culture ceramics.
 - Historic: Faience of Rouen, Sèvres porcelain.
 - Contemporary: Experimental ceramics in Vallauris.
- **Germany:**
 - Prehistoric: Linear Pottery Culture (LBK).
 - Historic: Meissen porcelain (first European hard-paste porcelain).
 - Contemporary: Avant-garde ceramics in Berlin.

1.1.4.1: Celtic

1.1.4.2: United Kingdom

1.1.4.2.1: Prehistoric

1.1.4.3: Vienna / Austria

This page titled [1.1.4: Western Europe](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.4.1: Celtic

Characteristics: Hand-built pottery, minimal glazing, geometric motifs.

This page titled [1.1.4.1: Celtic](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.4.2: United Kingdom

Characteristics: Prehistoric pottery, slipware, salt-glazed stoneware.

This page titled [1.1.4.2: United Kingdom](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.4.2.1: Prehistoric

Characteristics: Grooved ware, Beaker culture vessels.

This page titled [1.1.4.2.1: Prehistoric](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.4.3: Vienna / Austria

Vienna

Characteristics: Baroque ceramic tiles, Wiener Werkstätte design movement ceramics.



Sweetmeat dish

Manufactory Vienna

Factory director Claudius Innocentius Du Paquier period Austrian

ca. 1730

Sweetmeat dish

Manufactory: Vienna

Factory director: Claudius Innocentius Du Paquier period (1718–1744)

Date: ca. 1730

Culture: Austrian, Vienna

Medium: Hard-paste porcelain

Cup and Saucer



Manufactory Imperial Porcelain Manufactory

Factory director Matthias Niedermayer

1804

On view at The Met Fifth Avenue in Gallery 553

The night sky, though a key motif of German Romantic poetry and painting, is rarely seen on Continental porcelain of the early nineteenth century. The stark black sky, bright stars, and shining moon contrast with the gilding and ornate classical motifs seen on more typical porcelain pieces of the period. In the late eighteenth century, the moon became a source of fascination for German poets, who explored themes of yearning, solitude, and despair.

Imperial Porcelain Manufactory (Vienna, 1744–1864)

Factory director: Matthias Niedermayer

Date: 1804

Culture: Austrian, Vienna

Medium: Porcelain

This page titled [1.1.4.3: Vienna / Austria](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.5: Northern Europe

Characteristics: Nordic bronze-age pottery, simple and utilitarian forms.

This page titled [1.1.5: Northern Europe](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.6: Eastern Europe

Eastern Europe

Characteristics: Painted ceramics from Romania, Ukraine's Trypillian culture.

- **Russia:**
 - Prehistoric: Fatyanovo-Balanovo pottery.
 - Historic: Gzhel ceramics, Imperial porcelain.
 - Contemporary: Abstract and decorative ceramic art.
- **Poland:**
 - Historic: Bunzlauer pottery (blue and white ceramics).
 - Contemporary: Functional and artistic ceramics.

This page titled [1.1.6: Eastern Europe](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

SECTION OVERVIEW

1.1.7: Southern Europe

Southern Europe

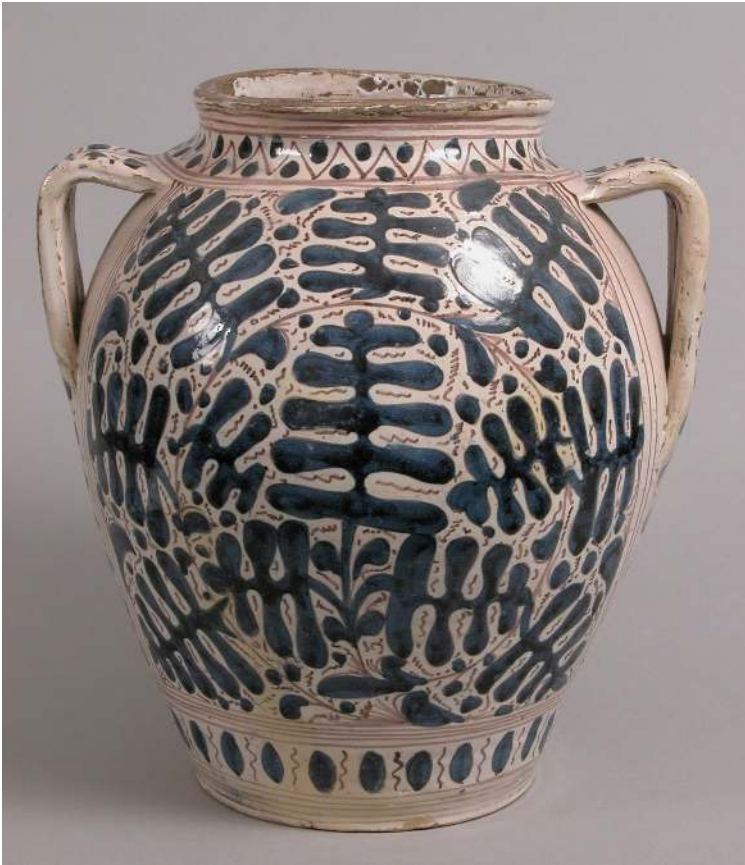
- **Italy:**
 - Prehistoric: Apennine culture pottery.
 - Historic: Etruscan ceramics, Majolica from Deruta.
 - Contemporary: Modern reinterpretations of majolica.
- **Spain:**
 - Prehistoric: Bell Beaker culture.
 - Historic: Islamic lusterware (Al-Andalus), Talavera pottery.
 - Contemporary: Modern ceramics in Valencia.
- **Greece:**
 - Prehistoric: Minoan pottery (e.g., Kamares ware).
 - Historic: Black-figure and red-figure pottery.
 - Contemporary: Artistic ceramics inspired by ancient forms.

1.1.7.1: Etruscan

This page titled [1.1.7: Southern Europe](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.7.1: Etruscan

Characteristics: Bucchero ware (black, burnished ceramics), funerary urns.



Two-Handled Jar

Italian

early 15th century

On view at The Met Fifth Avenue in Gallery 307

The lobed leaf pattern, found on many early Florentine vessels, was likely inspired by local silks and linens.

This page titled [1.1.7.1: Etruscan](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

SECTION OVERVIEW

1.1.8: North Africa

North Africa

Egypt:

- - Prehistoric: Naqada culture pottery.
 - Historic: Faience, Coptic ceramics.
 - Contemporary: Studio pottery movements.
- **Morocco:**
 - Historic: Fez pottery with intricate geometric designs.
 - Contemporary: Modern adaptations of traditional styles.

1.1.8.1: Egypt

This page titled [1.1.8: North Africa](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.8.1: Egypt

Egyptian

Characteristics: Faience pottery, blue-green glazed artifacts.

Periods: Predynastic to Ptolemaic Egypt.



Faience Inlay

New Kingdom, Ramesside

ca. 1184–1153 B.C.

On view at The Met Fifth Avenue in Gallery 122

This decorative tile may be associated with the ceramic art of the reign of Ramesses III. It was intended to fit together with similar tiles to form a horizontal pattern of petals.

This page titled [1.1.8.1: Egypt](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.9: Africa

This page titled [1.1.9: Africa](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.9.1: Kongo

Kongo

Characteristics: Ceremonial pottery, figural vessels reflecting spiritual beliefs.

Mangaaka Power Figure (Nkisi N’Kondi)

Kongo artist and nganga, Yombe group

Second half of the 19th century



Central African power figures are among the ubiquitous genres identified with African art. Conceived to house specific mystical forces, they were collaborative creations of Kongo sculptors and ritual specialists. This example belongs to the most ambitious class of that tradition, attributed to the atelier of a master active along the coast of Congo and Angola at the end of the nineteenth century and identified with Mangaaka, the preeminent force of jurisprudence.

That power was represented as a presiding authority and enforcing lord or king. Its crowning element is the distinctive mpu headdress worn by chiefs or priests. The figure's posture and gesture, leaning forward with hands placed akimbo on the hips, is the aggressive attitude of one who challenges fearlessly. Traces of a missing beard—a sign of seniority—survive in the form of nails along the contours of the chin. There are also vestiges of an abdominal cavity for medicinal matter that originally attracted the figure's defining force. The various metals embedded in the figure's expansive torso attest to its central role as witness and enforcer of affairs critical to its community. They document vows sealed, treaties signed, and efforts to eradicate evil. Ultimately, this work inspired reflection on the consequences of transgressing established codes of social conduct.

Kongo artist and nganga, Yombe group

Date: Second half of the 19th century

Geography: Republic of the Congo or Cabinda, Angola, Chiloango River

Culture: Kongo

Medium: Wood, iron, resin, ceramic, plant fiber, textile, pigment

This page titled [1.1.9.1: Kongo](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.1.10: Australia/ New Zealand

Characteristics: Aboriginal clay work, pit firing, Maori ceramic revival movements.

This page titled [1.1.10: Australia/ New Zealand](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.2: Evolution of Ceramic Techniques

This page titled [1.2: Evolution of Ceramic Techniques](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.3: Ceramics and Cultural Identity

Chapter: Ceramics and Cultural Context

Ceramics as a Reflection of Social, Economic, and Religious Life

Throughout history, ceramics have mirrored the daily lives and spiritual values of the societies that produced them. In prehistoric cultures, pottery often reflected communal needs—simple utilitarian vessels for food storage and cooking that nonetheless bore regional patterns and symbolic markings tied to early spiritual beliefs. In the classical period, ceramics became more refined and intertwined with trade economies and formal religious practices. Greek amphorae, for instance, not only stored oil and wine but also depicted myths and civic life. In the modern era, industrialization influenced mass production, yet artisanal traditions persisted, showcasing ceramics' adaptability to both economic necessity and cultural expression. Postmodern interpretations of ceramics explore these histories critically, using the medium to question the narratives of power, identity, and belief encoded within material culture.

Regional Styles and Their Significance

Regional styles in ceramics demonstrate how geography, available resources, and localized cultural expressions shape distinct artistic identities. Prehistoric regional ceramics, such as Jomon pottery in Japan or Corded Ware in Europe, highlight how isolated communities developed unique forms and techniques. In the classical period, stylistic motifs—such as the red-figure and black-figure techniques in Greece or Sancai glazes in Tang Dynasty China—reflected political and cultural hegemonies. Modern nationalism often encouraged the revival and codification of regional ceramic styles to promote cultural pride. Postmodern perspectives examine regional styles both as authentic traditions and as constructed identities, questioning how globalization and cultural commodification impact the preservation of localized aesthetics.

Ceramics in Rituals and Ceremonies

Ceramics have played essential roles in rituals, from prehistoric burial urns to ceremonial libation vessels in ancient temples. Early methodologies reveal that the spiritual significance of ceramics often eclipsed their utilitarian function, embedding belief systems within everyday objects. In classical antiquity, vessels used in religious ceremonies were frequently decorated with narratives glorifying the divine. Modern anthropological studies emphasize the endurance of ceremonial pottery in indigenous and rural contexts, recognizing their role in sustaining communal memory. Postmodern analysis, meanwhile, interrogates the museum display of ritual ceramics, raising questions about the decontextualization of sacred objects and their transformation into aesthetic commodities.

Revival and Preservation of Indigenous Ceramic Traditions

The modern period saw a decline in many indigenous ceramic traditions due to colonization, industrialization, and global market pressures. However, conscious revival efforts emerged in the 20th and 21st centuries, often framed by ethnographic methodologies that sought to preserve intangible cultural heritage. Prehistoric and classical indigenous forms were studied and sometimes romanticized, while living artisans worked to maintain or adapt traditional techniques. Postmodern discourse emphasizes indigenous agency in these revivals, challenging outsider narratives and supporting self-determined cultural sustainability. Today, many ceramic artists consciously blend traditional methods with contemporary forms, ensuring that indigenous ceramics remain dynamic, not static relics.

Ceramics as a Medium for Social Commentary

Ceramics, traditionally seen as functional or decorative, have increasingly become a platform for social critique. Prehistoric examples of symbolic pottery hint at early expressions of social order and identity. Classical ceramics often reinforced societal norms but occasionally satirized political life, as seen in comedic scenes on Greek vessels. Modern and postmodern ceramic artists overtly engage with issues such as colonialism, gender, race, and consumer culture. Using familiar forms like teapots or jars, contemporary artists subvert expectations, drawing attention to social inequities and political unrest. Through humor, irony, and the recontextualization of traditional objects, ceramics continue to challenge and expand cultural narratives.

This page titled [1.3: Ceramics and Cultural Identity](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

1.4: Contemporary Ceramic Art

Contemporary Ceramic Art

Defining Characteristics of Contemporary Ceramic Art

Contemporary ceramic art is distinguished by its diversity, innovation, and a deliberate blurring of the boundaries between craft, fine art, and design. While traditional ceramics emphasized functionality, contemporary practice embraces sculpture, installation, conceptual art, and mixed media. Artists often challenge conventions about what ceramics "should" be, using the medium for experimental surface treatments, monumental scale, narrative content, and social critique. Technological advances such as 3D printing, alongside a renewed appreciation for hand-building and alternative firing methods, characterize the richness of contemporary ceramic expression.

Focusing on the present day, contemporary ceramic art is characterized by innovation, thematic exploration, and the intersection of ceramics with other artistic disciplines. Contemporary ceramicists embrace a broad range of approaches, blurring the lines between craft, sculpture, painting, and conceptual art. This section explores defining characteristics, notable artists, thematic trends, and the crucial roles of galleries, exhibitions, and collectors in shaping the field.

Defining Characteristics of Contemporary Ceramic Art

Contemporary ceramic art is diverse, experimental, and boundary-defying. Moving beyond functionality, many contemporary artists use clay to create conceptual sculptures, installations, and mixed-media works. While handbuilding and wheel-throwing remain vital, new technologies like 3D printing and innovative firing techniques expand possibilities. Surface treatments range from traditional glazes to experimental painting, emphasizing texture, narrative, and symbolism. Above all, contemporary ceramics challenge expectations about form, function, and meaning.

Peter Voulkos and the Brutalist Influence

Peter Voulkos (1924–2002) revolutionized American ceramics, breaking away from traditional utilitarian pottery to align ceramics with the avant-garde and abstract expressionism. His robust, sculptural forms, often torn, punctured, and fused with metal rods, share affinities with Brutalist art and architecture. While not formally aligned with Brutalism, Voulkos's aggressive manipulation of clay mirrored the movement's emphasis on raw, unrefined materials. Voulkos dismantled the boundary between craft and fine art, using ceramics as a platform for pure artistic expression. His influence is profound: through his teaching at Otis Art Institute and UC Berkeley, he inspired a generation of artists to embrace risk, scale, and abstraction in clay.

Studio Pottery and the Mingei Movement: Leach, Hamada, MacKenzie

Warren MacKenzie, Bernard Leach, Shoji Hamada, and Soetsu Yanagi were central to shaping a philosophy that emphasized craftsmanship, humility, and beauty in everyday ceramics. Inspired by the Japanese Mingei movement, they championed functional pottery as a legitimate art form. Bernard Leach's *A Potter's Book* merged Eastern and Western philosophies, influencing countless potters in the mid-20th century. Hamada, a Living National Treasure of Japan, modeled the principles of the handmade through simplicity and authenticity. Warren MacKenzie disseminated these values throughout the United States, emphasizing functional ware as an artistic pursuit. Their legacy endures today, reflected in the appreciation for handmade pottery that balances artistry with utility.

Contributions of Female Ceramists

Women played—and continue to play—an essential role in elevating ceramics as a major contemporary art form. Toshiko Takaezu created closed-form sculptures that blended spirituality and abstraction. Georgia O'Keeffe, though renowned for painting, explored ceramics as an extension of her engagement with form and color. Betty Woodman shattered the boundaries between sculpture, painting, and ceramics, often infusing domestic forms with feminist critiques. Viola Frey's monumental figures challenged societal norms through scale and color. Beatrice Wood, a key figure associated with Dadaism, brought whimsy and luster to clay, inspiring generations. Together, these women advanced ceramics into mainstream recognition and expanded the possibilities of the medium.

Trends in Thematic Exploration and Technique

Contemporary ceramicists explore personal narratives, identity politics, environmental issues, and critiques of consumer culture. Artists embrace imperfection, fragility, and rawness as aesthetic choices. Techniques often merge traditional processes with unexpected materials like textiles, metals, or found objects. There is also a growing movement toward eco-conscious practices, alternative firing, and the use of recycled materials, linking ceramics to broader dialogues about sustainability.

Intersection of Ceramics with Other Art Forms

Today's ceramicists frequently cross disciplinary boundaries. Clay objects appear in installation art, performative works, digital modeling, and conceptual projects. Some artists integrate video, sound, and live performance with ceramic pieces, creating multisensory experiences. This interdisciplinary approach reflects postmodern values: rejecting rigid categorization and celebrating hybridity.

Role of Galleries, Exhibitions, and Collectors

Contemporary ceramics have gained increasing visibility through prestigious exhibitions like the Venice Biennale and Art Basel. Specialized galleries—such as Jason Jacques Gallery and Lucy Lacoste Gallery—promote ceramic artists to international audiences. Critical collectors like Garth Clark and Mark Delvecchio, and curators like Garth Johnson and Peter Held, have played key roles in advocating for ceramics as fine art. Institutions now recognize ceramic art in major museum collections, signaling a shift in valuation from mere craft to intellectual and aesthetic significance.

The Impact of Digital Media: Blogs, Social Media, and YouTube

Digital platforms have revolutionized how ceramics are created, taught, and appreciated. Early blogs offered behind-the-scenes glimpses into ceramic practice, while social media democratized exposure. Instagram, with its visual focus, allowed artists like Carole Epp and Adam Field to share work, techniques, and advocacy, building global communities around ceramics. YouTube tutorials broke geographical barriers, enabling artists to learn wheel-throwing, carving, and glazing from masters worldwide. These platforms foster mentorship, community, and innovation, helping ceramics flourish in the 21st century.

Notable Contemporary Ceramic Artists and Their Contributions

Many contemporary ceramic artists have expanded the possibilities of the medium while also engaging broader social, political, and environmental themes. Betty Woodman pioneered the fusion of painting and pottery, turning functional forms into vivid sculptural canvases. Grayson Perry uses ceramics to explore issues of identity, class, and society with irony and humor. The Haas Brothers blend ceramics with design and fantasy, pushing material boundaries. Artists like Magdalene Odundo and Theaster Gates draw upon global traditions to create work that is both contemporary and rooted in historical reference. Their contributions reveal how ceramics have become a dynamic platform for personal, cultural, and political storytelling.

Trends in Thematic Exploration and Technique

Contemporary ceramics reflect a broad range of themes, from personal narrative and memory to global concerns like environmental degradation and social justice. Artists explore fragility and resilience through material choices, using breakage, organic textures, or recycled materials as metaphors. Techniques include combining clay with nontraditional media such as textiles, metals, or found objects, and embracing both high-tech fabrication and ancient methods like pit firing. There is also a strong movement toward the re-examination of traditional forms (such as vessels) within new conceptual frameworks, allowing artists to comment on continuity and change across time and cultures.

The Intersection of Ceramics with Other Art Forms

In contemporary practice, ceramics often intersects with painting, sculpture, performance, and digital art. Vessels and sculptures might feature painted surfaces akin to canvases, while performative installations incorporate clay objects as active elements in live or video performances. Some artists use clay digitally, designing 3D-printed ceramic structures or creating virtual clay models for exhibitions. This cross-disciplinary approach reflects a broader postmodern trend of hybridity and deconstruction of rigid artistic categories, positioning ceramics not just as craft but as a medium of conceptual innovation and sensory experience.

The Role of Galleries, Exhibitions, and Collectors in Promoting Contemporary Ceramics

The visibility and valuation of contemporary ceramics have been significantly influenced by the role of galleries, exhibitions, and collectors. Major exhibitions such as the Venice Biennale and international art fairs increasingly include ceramic works, signaling their acceptance into the highest echelons of the art world. Specialized galleries dedicated to ceramics, like Jason Jacques Gallery or Lucy Lacoste Gallery, nurture and promote ceramic artists. Collectors and institutions have also played a critical role, challenging the outdated notion of ceramics as merely decorative and emphasizing its critical importance in contemporary discourse. Through these avenues, ceramics have been recontextualized from functional or folk craft to celebrated fine art.

- **Garth Clark** — Art critic, historian, and gallerist who championed ceramics as fine art. Co-founder of Garth Clark Gallery and prolific writer. Notable Work: "Shards: Garth Clark on Ceramic Art." [Official website](#).
- **Mark Delvecchio** — Co-director of Garth Clark Gallery, influential in promoting contemporary ceramics collecting. Notable Work: Co-author of "Hand and Soul: Contemporary Ceramics." [Profile with Garth Clark Gallery](#).
- **Carole Epp** — Canadian ceramic artist and activist, known for her narrative figurines and advocacy for social change through craft. Notable Works: "Mending" series, "Joy" series. [Official website](#).
- **Adam Field** — American potter known for intricate carved porcelain and educational outreach through social media. Notable Works: Onggi jar series; Carved Porcelain Jar. [Official website](#).
- **Viola Frey** (1933–2004) — American sculptor known for monumental ceramic figures exploring identity and social norms. Notable Works: "Man in Suit," "Woman with Mandolin." [Artsy profile](#).
- **Peter Held** — Curator and historian who advanced the understanding of ceramics through exhibitions at ASU Art Museum and writings. Notable Work: Editor of "Ceramic Art in the Midwest: A Survey." [ASU Art Museum Ceramics Center](#).
- **Shoji Hamada** (1894–1978) — Japanese potter and Living National Treasure, central figure in the Mingei movement emphasizing handmade tradition. Notable Works: Traditional Mashiko ware. [V&A Museum article](#).
- **Garth Johnson** — Curator of ceramics at the Everson Museum of Art, artist, and writer focusing on contemporary craft culture. Notable Work: "1000 Ideas for Creative Reuse." [Everson Museum profile](#).
- **Bernard Leach** (1887–1979) — British studio potter who bridged Eastern and Western ceramic traditions; author of *A Potter's Book*. Notable Works: Leach Pottery, St. Ives. [Leach Pottery official site](#).
- **Warren MacKenzie** (1924–2018) — American potter who carried forward the Mingei movement's values of functional, honest pottery. Notable Works: Functional stoneware; MacKenzie pots. [Northern Clay Center biography](#).
- **Georgia O'Keeffe** (1887–1986) — Primarily a painter, O'Keeffe explored ceramics in later life, applying her abstraction to vessel forms. Notable Works: Handbuilt ceramic sculptures, exhibited at Georgia O'Keeffe Museum. [Georgia O'Keeffe Museum](#).
- **Ulysses Grant Dietz** — Senior curator at the Newark Museum, expert on decorative arts, including ceramics, and advocate for LGBTQ+ representation in museums. Notable Work: "Dream House: The White House as an American Home." [Newark Museum profile](#).
- **Toshiko Takaezu** (1922–2011) — Japanese-American ceramist and educator known for closed-form vessels symbolizing spiritual wholeness. Notable Works: "Closed Form" series. [Craft Council article](#).
- **Peter Voulkos** (1924–2002) — Transformed American ceramics by integrating abstract expressionist aesthetics and Brutalist influences. Notable Works: "Little Big Horn," "Untitled Stack." [The Marks Project](#).
- **Betty Woodman** (1930–2018) — American artist whose colorful, sculptural ceramics bridged painting, sculpture, and decorative arts. Notable Works: "Pillow Pitcher," "Aztec Vase and Carpet." [Artsy profile](#).
- **Beatrice Wood** (1893–1998) — Dada artist and ceramicist known for her lustrous glazes and whimsical forms. Notable Works: "Chalice," "Lustre Vase." [Smithsonian American Art biography](#).
- **Soetsu Yanagi** (1889–1961) — Japanese philosopher and founder of the Mingei movement, advocating for beauty in everyday handmade crafts. Notable Work: *The Unknown Craftsman*. [Japan Folk Crafts Museum](#).

This page titled [1.4: Contemporary Ceramic Art](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

2: Studio Foundation

Topic hierarchy

- [2.1: Setting Up Your Studio Space](#)
- [2.2: Essential Tools and Their Uses](#)
- [2.3: Health and Safety in the Ceramic Studio](#)
- [2.4: Understanding Kilns- Types and Uses](#)
- [2.5: Troubleshooting](#)

This page titled [2: Studio Foundation](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

2.1: Setting Up Your Studio Space

Studio Layout

The Blueprint for Efficiency

- Efficiency and Safety:

A ceramics studio requires careful organization to ensure smooth workflow and safety. For example, placing your wedging table near the storage area for clay minimizes unnecessary movement. Safety is equally important—having clear pathways prevents tripping over tools or materials. Always arrange heavy equipment like kilns against walls to maximize open space and reduce hazards.

- Key Considerations:

Plan your studio layout to optimize the sequence of tasks, from preparing clay to firing. For instance, placing the firing area away from the workspace reduces exposure to heat and fumes. Consider ergonomic setup for your worktable to avoid strain while shaping or decorating pieces. A well-planned studio not only supports efficiency but also fosters creativity by keeping the space uncluttered.

Lighting and Ventilation

- Ventilation:

Ventilation is essential to remove harmful airborne particles, especially silica dust, which is a byproduct of working with clay. If your studio lacks natural ventilation, install an exhaust fan near the kiln and work areas. A cross-ventilation system, where air flows in one direction across the studio, is ideal. Always keep windows open during kiln operation or when sanding dry clay.

- Natural Light:

Proper lighting ensures you can accurately see details in your work, such as textures and glaze colors. Daylight-simulating bulbs mimic natural sunlight, providing consistent lighting even at night. Poor lighting can lead to misjudged colors, especially with glazes that change appearance after firing. If possible, position your workspace near a window to benefit from natural light during the day.

Storage for Materials and Finished Work

- Airtight Containers:

Airtight containers prevent raw clay from drying out, preserving its plasticity for longer use. Label each container with the type of clay (e.g., stoneware or porcelain) to avoid mixing them accidentally. For glaze materials, store them in tightly sealed jars to prevent contamination from dust or moisture. Use stackable bins to maximize space while keeping materials organized.

- Finished Work Shelves:

Finished pieces require careful storage to avoid damage before and after firing. Use padded shelves or line them with foam to protect delicate work. Ensure shelves are sturdy enough to hold the weight of multiple ceramic pieces. Allocate separate shelves for greenware (unfired clay), bisque ware (fired once), and glazed work awaiting firing.

This page titled [2.1: Setting Up Your Studio Space](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

2.2: Essential Tools and Their Uses

Basic Tools: Building Your Toolkit

- Needle Tool:

The needle tool is one of the most versatile tools in ceramics, used for scoring, trimming, and measuring. For instance, use it to pierce air bubbles in thrown pieces on the wheel. When scoring clay, the tool creates grooves that help two pieces adhere during assembly. Always handle it with care, as the sharp tip can easily cause injury if left lying around.

- Rib Tool:

Rib tools come in different materials—rubber for smoothing soft clay, wood for shaping, and metal for scraping. Rubber ribs are excellent for compressing the clay surface on the wheel to prevent cracks. Metal ribs are more rigid, making them ideal for trimming excess clay during throwing. Wooden ribs are lightweight and perfect for shaping hand-built pieces.

Advanced Tools and Their Functions

- Extruder:

An extruder simplifies the process of creating uniform shapes like coils, handles, or hollow forms. It consists of a barrel where clay is loaded and a die that shapes the clay as it is pushed out. Beginners can start with hand-held extruders, while advanced users might opt for wall-mounted versions for larger projects. Cleaning the extruder after use is crucial, as dried clay can block the mechanism.

- Calipers:

Calipers are indispensable when creating pieces that need to fit together, such as lids for jars. They measure the internal and external diameters of clay forms with precision. Always measure at the soft clay stage, as shrinkage during drying and firing will affect the final size. Investing in adjustable calipers ensures they can be used for a variety of projects.

Manual vs. Electric Wheels

- Manual (Kick) Wheel:

A kick wheel is powered by the user's foot, offering a slower, more controlled pace for beginners. While it requires more physical effort, it allows you to feel the rhythm of shaping the clay. Manual wheels are highly durable, requiring little maintenance. They are also quieter than electric wheels, making them ideal for small, shared studio spaces.

- Electric Wheel:

Electric wheels are powered by a motor, with a foot pedal to control the speed. They are user-friendly and allow for continuous throwing without physical strain. The consistent speed makes them ideal for intricate work, such as creating thin walls on a vase. Maintenance involves cleaning the splash pan and checking the motor for any irregularities.

2.3: Health and Safety in the Ceramic Studio

Understanding Studio Hazards

See University of the Pacific Ceramics Studio - Standard Operating Procedures Document for specific safety measures when using campus facilities.

- Silica:

Silica is a naturally occurring mineral in clay and glazes, but its fine particles are harmful when inhaled. Prolonged exposure to silica dust can lead to silicosis, a lung disease. To mitigate risk, always clean surfaces with a wet sponge rather than sweeping. Wearing a mask (rated N95 or higher) while sanding or mixing dry clay is essential for personal protection.

- PPE (Personal Protective Equipment):

Personal protective equipment includes masks, gloves, goggles, and aprons to safeguard against various hazards. Nitrile gloves protect your hands from chemicals in glazes or underglazes. Goggles prevent glaze splatters from reaching your eyes during application. Aprons keep your clothes clean while adding a layer of protection against clay and water splashes.

Emergency Preparedness

- First Aid Kit:

A studio first aid kit should include bandages, antiseptic wipes, and burn ointment to treat minor injuries. Cuts from sharp tools or burns from hot kilns are common in ceramics. Regularly check the kit to ensure all supplies are stocked and unexpired. Familiarize yourself and studio members with its location for quick access during emergencies.

- Fire Extinguisher:

Place a fire extinguisher near the kiln or any area where electrical equipment is used. Ensure it is rated for electrical and chemical fires (Class C). Conduct routine checks to ensure the extinguisher is in working order. During kiln operation, stay in the studio or nearby to monitor the firing process.

This page titled [2.3: Health and Safety in the Ceramic Studio](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

2.4: Understanding Kilns- Types and Uses

Kilns: The Heart of the Studio

- Electric Kilns:

Electric kilns are the most common choice for beginner and home studios due to their reliability and ease of use. They are powered by electricity and controlled by a digital or manual controller to regulate temperature. Beginners can experiment with consistent results using electric kilns, making them great for learning. Ensure the kiln is on a dedicated circuit to avoid electrical overloads.

- Gas Kilns:

Gas kilns require a propane or natural gas source, making them suitable for studios with outdoor space. They allow for reduction firing, which removes oxygen during the firing process to create unique glaze effects. Operating a gas kiln requires additional safety precautions and experience. Always have a carbon monoxide detector nearby when firing indoors or semi-enclosed areas.

Firing Cycles

- Bisque Firing:

The bisque firing hardens the clay enough to handle but leaves it porous to absorb glaze. Typically fired at 1,800°F, it removes moisture and organic material from the clay. Always ensure your pieces are completely dry before bisque firing to prevent explosions from trapped water vapor. Use pyrometric cones to confirm the kiln has reached the correct temperature.

- Glaze Firing:

Glaze firing involves applying glaze to bisque-fired pieces, then firing them at a higher temperature. The heat melts the glaze into a glassy coating, sealing the surface. Be careful to leave a clean foot (the bottom of your piece) to prevent it from sticking to the kiln shelf. Kiln wash, a protective coating on shelves, helps prevent permanent damage if glaze drips.

Kiln Safety Protocols

- Never overload the kiln:

Pieces that are too close together can restrict airflow, leading to uneven firing. Leave at least one inch of space between pieces and the kiln walls. Overloading can also increase the risk of thermal shock, which causes cracking. Always use kiln posts and shelves to create multiple levels for efficient loading.

By elaborating each concept, beginners can better understand not only the "what" and "how" but also the "why" behind studio setup and ceramic processes. This foundational knowledge ensures a safer, more efficient, and enjoyable studio experience.

Kiln Maintenance and Troubleshooting

- Regular Inspections:

Kilns are durable but require regular inspections to ensure they function safely and effectively. Check the elements (the heating coils in an electric kiln) for signs of wear, such as thinning or breaking. Cracked kiln shelves or posts should be replaced to prevent uneven firings or collapse during a cycle. Keep a maintenance log to track repairs and ensure timely replacements.

- Kiln Cleaning:

A clean kiln performs better and lasts longer. Remove glaze drips from kiln shelves using a chisel or grinder, but always wear protective gear to avoid inhaling dust. Sweep or vacuum out debris between firings to prevent contamination of your pieces. Use kiln wash (a protective coating) on shelves and posts to protect them from glaze drips during firing.

- Troubleshooting Misfires:

Misfires can happen due to improper programming, electrical issues, or overloading the kiln. If a kiln fails to reach temperature, check the thermocouple (the device that measures heat inside the kiln) for damage or misalignment. Double-check firing schedules in the kiln's controller to ensure you've selected the correct program. If misfires persist, consult the kiln manual or seek professional repair services.

- Safety First:

Never leave a kiln unattended during the critical stages of firing. If using a manual kiln, monitor the temperature manually with pyrometric cones to ensure accuracy. Always unplug the kiln or turn off the gas supply before performing any maintenance. Invest in a kiln vent system to safely expel harmful fumes, particularly from glazes containing lead or sulfur.

This page titled [2.4: Understanding Kilns- Types and Uses](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

2.5: Troubleshooting

Studio Setup Challenges

- Poor Lighting:

If natural light is unavailable, install overhead lighting combined with task lights at your workstations. LED bulbs that mimic daylight are energy-efficient and provide consistent brightness. Place lights at an angle to avoid harsh shadows on your work surface. Portable lamps can help illuminate detailed work areas, such as when decorating or carving clay.

- Dust Accumulation:

Clay dust poses serious health risks, so control it with daily cleaning routines. Use a damp mop or cloth instead of sweeping to avoid stirring up dust particles. Install an air purifier with a HEPA filter to capture fine dust that remains in the air. Encourage studio users to clean their work areas immediately after use to maintain a shared safe space.

Kiln-Related Issues

- Uneven Firings:

Uneven heat distribution in the kiln can lead to under- or over-fired pieces. Avoid this by loading the kiln evenly, placing larger pieces in the center and smaller ones near the edges. Use kiln furniture (shelves and posts) to create levels that distribute heat more effectively. If the issue persists, inspect the kiln elements for wear and replace them as needed.

- Cracking During Firing:

Cracks often result from firing wet clay or uneven drying. Before firing, ensure all pieces are completely dry by allowing them to air dry for several days or using a dehumidifier. Use a slow ramp (gradual temperature increase) during the early stages of firing to prevent thermal shock. Test your clay body's compatibility with your firing schedule to avoid issues.

This page titled [2.5: Troubleshooting](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

3: Clay The Ceramic Medium

Topic hierarchy

- [3.1: Types of Clay and Their Properties](#)
- [3.2: Preparing and Recycling Clay](#)
- [3.3: The Science of Clay- From Plasticity to Vitreousness](#)
- [3.4: Storing and Reclaiming Clay](#)
- [3.5: Troubleshooting](#)

This page titled [3: Clay The Ceramic Medium](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

3.1: Types of Clay and Their Properties

Understanding Different Clay Bodies

Raw Materials in detail

The formula of clay varies depending on its composition, as clay minerals can differ in their chemical makeup. However, a generalized formula for clay minerals, such as kaolinite, is:



This formula represents the basic structural unit of kaolinite, which consists of one aluminum (Al) atom surrounded by four oxygen (O) atoms in a tetrahedral arrangement, and two silicon (Si) atoms surrounded by four oxygen (O) atoms and one hydroxyl (OH) group in an octahedral arrangement. This basic unit repeats to form the crystal lattice structure of the clay mineral.

It's important to note that clay can also contain other elements and impurities, such as iron, magnesium, calcium, and potassium, which can influence its properties and behavior.

Clay, stoneware, and porcelain are all types of ceramic materials, but they have distinct compositions and properties.

1. Clay: Clay is a natural material composed of finely grained minerals and organic matter. It is formed through the weathering and decomposition of rocks rich in aluminum silicates. Clay is plastic when wet, allowing it to be molded and shaped, and it hardens when fired at high temperatures.

2. Stoneware: Stoneware is a type of clay-based ceramic that is fired at a high temperature, typically between 2,100°F and 2,300°F (1,150°C and 1,260°C). It is known for its durability, strength, and non-porous nature. Stoneware clay contains a higher percentage of flux materials, such as feldspar or talc, which vitrify during firing, resulting in a dense, waterproof surface.

3. Porcelain: Porcelain is a type of ceramic made from a specific type of clay called kaolin, along with other materials such as feldspar and silica. It is fired at a very high temperature, typically above 2,300°F (1,260°C), which causes the clay particles to vitrify and fuse together, resulting in a translucent, glass-like appearance. Porcelain is prized for its strength, whiteness, and ability to hold intricate details.

While clay, stoneware, and porcelain are all ceramic materials, they are not the same. They vary in composition, firing temperature, and properties. Clay is a broad term that encompasses various types of natural materials, while stoneware and porcelain refer to specific types of ceramic made from different types of clay and fired at different temperatures.

Clay is a naturally occurring material composed primarily of fine-grained minerals, organic materials, and water. Its scientific makeup varies depending on its composition, but generally, clay consists of hydrated aluminum silicates, such as kaolinite, illite, and montmorillonite. These minerals are formed through the weathering and decomposition of rocks, particularly feldspar-rich rocks like granite, and are typically found in sedimentary deposits.

The key difference between dirt and clay lies in their composition and physical properties. While dirt is a more general term that encompasses various types of soil and organic matter, clay specifically refers to a type of soil characterized by its small particle size and plasticity when moistened. Clay particles are much finer than those found in dirt, giving clay its unique properties, such as the ability to be molded and shaped when wet and to retain its form when dry.

Clay can be found naturally in a variety of environments, including riverbeds, lakebeds, coastal regions, and areas with volcanic activity. It is often associated with sedimentary deposits and can be mined or extracted from the earth's surface or subsurface. Additionally, clay deposits may be found in areas where geological processes have concentrated clay minerals over time, such as in areas with high levels of erosion or sedimentation.

Additional Reading Recommendations:

Wild Clay by Hitomi Shibata, Matt Levy, and Takuro Shibata

Clay and Glazes by Daniel Rhodes

Primary clays and secondary clays are two classifications of clay based on their geological formation and composition:

1. Primary Clays:

- Primary clays are clays that form directly from the decomposition and weathering of rocks in their original location.
- They are typically composed of pure clay minerals and have undergone minimal transportation or alteration from their original source.
- Primary clays tend to have high plasticity and are often used in ceramic production due to their favorable properties for shaping and firing.

2. Secondary Clays:

- Secondary clays are clays that have been transported from their original source by natural processes like water or wind and deposited elsewhere.
- During transportation and deposition, secondary clays may undergo physical and chemical changes, such as mixing with other materials and the loss of some clay minerals.
- As a result, secondary clays often contain impurities, such as sand, silt, and organic matter, which can affect their plasticity and firing characteristics.
- Secondary clays are generally less desirable for ceramics compared to primary clays but can still be used in certain applications, especially when mixed with other materials or processed to remove impurities.

In summary, primary clays form directly from the weathering of rocks and are typically pure in composition, while secondary clays are transported and deposited elsewhere, often containing impurities due to their geological history.

Quick Understanding

- Earthenware:

This low-fire clay is soft and porous, making it ideal for beginners. It's often used for functional pottery like flowerpots and decorative tiles. Earthenware is available in red or white varieties, depending on its iron content. Glazes applied to earthenware require a clear topcoat to make them waterproof.

- Stoneware:

A versatile, high-fire clay known for its strength and durability. Stoneware is suitable for making functional items such as mugs, plates, and bowls. It can range in color from white to gray to brown, depending on the clay's mineral content. Fully vitrified stoneware becomes non-porous and ideal for everyday use.

- Porcelain:

Porcelain is a fine, white clay that produces smooth, translucent results after firing. It's challenging to work with because of its low plasticity (it can tear or collapse easily). Porcelain is often used for detailed sculpture and delicate functional items like teacups. It requires high firing temperatures, often exceeding 2,300°F, to achieve its glass-like finish.

Plasticity and Workability

- Plasticity Defined:

Plasticity refers to how easily clay can be shaped and molded. Highly plastic clays, like porcelain, allow for intricate detail but can be prone to cracking. Less plastic clays, like heavily grogged stoneware, are more stable but harder to manipulate. To increase plasticity, add bentonite or ball clay to your clay body.

- Tips for Testing Plasticity:

Roll out a thin coil of clay and bend it into a U-shape. If it cracks or breaks, the clay lacks plasticity and may need adjustment. Use this test to evaluate reclaimed clay or new clay bodies before committing to large projects. Practice wedging thoroughly to improve the clay's workability.

This page titled [3.1: Types of Clay and Their Properties](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

3.2: Preparing and Recycling Clay

Preparing and Recycling Clay

Wedging: The Key to Success

- Rams Head Wedging:

This technique is named after the shape the clay takes on during the process. It aligns the clay particles, removes air bubbles, and ensures consistency. To perform, press down and forward on the clay, then rotate and repeat. Continue until the clay has a uniform texture and is free of air pockets.

- Conch Shell Wedging:

Ideal for small batches, this technique involves rolling and folding the clay in a spiral motion. It's less physically demanding than rams head wedging but equally effective for removing air bubbles. Beginners often prefer this method because it requires less space and strength. Use a clean, smooth surface to avoid contamination.

Here's a step-by-step process for rams head and conch shell clay wedging, along with additional tips:

Rams Head Wedging:

1. Prepare the Clay: Start with a lump of clay that has been softened to a workable consistency. Cut a wedge-shaped piece from the clay using a wire tool or clay knife.
2. Form the Rams Head: Hold the wedge of clay in one hand with the pointed end facing upwards. Using your other hand, press your thumb into the center of the wide end of the wedge, creating a depression.
3. Shape the Horns: With your thumbs and fingers, pinch and pull the sides of the wedge upwards and outwards to form the horns of the rams head. Use gentle pressure and smooth movements to shape the clay evenly.
4. Refine the Details: Continue shaping and refining the horns, paying attention to symmetry and proportion. Use your fingers to smooth out any rough edges or uneven surfaces.
5. Finish the Head: Once the horns are shaped to your satisfaction, use a modeling tool or the edge of a rib to define the features of the rams head, such as the eyes, nose, and mouth. Add texture and detail as desired.

Conch Shell Wedging:

1. Prepare the Clay: Begin with a lump of clay that has been softened to a workable consistency. Cut a wedge-shaped piece from the clay using a wire tool or clay knife.
2. Form the Shell: Hold the wedge of clay in one hand with the pointed end facing upwards. Using your other hand, gently press and roll the clay between your palms to create a cylindrical shape.
3. Create the Spiral: Starting from the wide end of the cylinder, use your thumb or a modeling tool to press and roll the clay into a spiral shape, resembling the interior of a conch shell. Apply even pressure and work slowly to achieve a smooth spiral.
4. Refine the Shape: Once the spiral shape is formed, use your fingers to gently pinch and shape the edges of the clay to resemble the outer edge of a conch shell. Smooth out any rough areas and ensure that the spiral is evenly spaced and defined.
5. Add Detail: Use a modeling tool or the edge of a rib to add texture and detail to the surface of the conch shell, such as ridges, grooves, and markings. Pay attention to the natural characteristics of a conch shell and replicate them as closely as possible.

Additional Tips for Wedging:

- Always work on a clean, smooth surface to prevent contamination of the clay.
- Use consistent pressure and motion when wedging to ensure thorough mixing and alignment of clay particles.
- Rotate and flip the clay regularly while wedging to promote uniformity and prevent air pockets.
- Keep your hands and tools moistened with water to prevent the clay from sticking.
- Take breaks as needed to prevent fatigue and maintain focus and precision in your wedging technique.

- Practice regularly to improve your wedging skills and develop muscle memory for efficient and effective clay preparation.

Recycling Clay: A Sustainable Practice

- Soaking Dry Clay:

Collect dry clay scraps in a bucket and cover them with water. Allow the clay to soak until it breaks down into a slurry. Stir the mixture to ensure even consistency before drying it on a plaster bat. This method reduces waste and saves money on new clay purchases.

- Rehydrating Semi-Dry Clay:

Wrap the clay in a damp cloth, place it in a plastic bag, and let it sit for a few days. Check periodically and knead the clay to distribute the moisture evenly. Avoid adding too much water, as it can lead to uneven texture. Once rehydrated, wedge the clay thoroughly before use.

- Tools and machines for processing clay.
- Environmental considerations in clay recycling.
- Tips for storing and preserving plasticity.

This page titled [3.2: Preparing and Recycling Clay](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

3.3: The Science of Clay- From Plasticity to Vitreousness

Vitrification: The Final Transformation

- What is Vitrification?

Vitrification occurs when clay particles fuse together during firing, creating a dense, glass-like structure. This process is essential for making pottery waterproof and durable. For example, porcelain achieves full vitrification at higher temperatures than stoneware or earthenware.

- How to Recognize Vitrification:

Fully vitrified clay will not absorb water, even if unglazed. Test your fired pieces by leaving them submerged in water overnight. If the piece absorbs moisture and darkens, it hasn't reached full vitrification. Adjust your firing schedule or clay body as needed to improve results.

This page titled [3.3: The Science of Clay- From Plasticity to Vitreousness](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

3.4: Storing and Reclaiming Clay

Best practices for clay storage to maintain workability.

- Techniques for reclaiming and rehydrating dry clay.
- Managing a recycling system in educational or community studios.
- Health and safety considerations for clay dust.
- Sustainable practices in clay conservation.

The process of reclaiming clay involves recycling clay scraps and trimmings to make them usable again. Here's a step-by-step guide to reclaiming clay:

1. **Collect Clay Scraps:** Gather all the clay scraps, trimmings, and unused clay from your studio. This can include dried clay scraps, trimmings from throwing or hand-building, and any clay that hasn't been fired yet.
2. **Break Down the Clay:** Break the clay scraps into smaller pieces to aid in the reclaiming process. You can use a hammer, rolling pin, or a clay wire tool to break the clay into manageable pieces.
3. **Soak the Clay:** Place the broken clay pieces into a container filled with water. Allow the clay to soak for several hours or overnight. This helps to soften the clay and make it easier to work with.
4. **Mix and Stir:** Once the clay has softened, use your hands or a mixing tool to thoroughly mix and stir the clay and water mixture. Break up any large clumps and ensure that the clay is evenly distributed throughout the water.
5. **Separate Impurities:** As you mix the clay and water, any impurities such as rocks, debris, or organic matter will float to the surface. Use a sieve or mesh screen to skim off these impurities and discard them.
6. **Settle and Drain:** Allow the clay and water mixture to settle for a period of time, typically 24-48 hours. During this time, the clay particles will settle to the bottom of the container while excess water rises to the top. Carefully pour off the excess water, being careful not to disturb the settled clay.
7. **Remove Excess Water:** Once the excess water has been poured off, you may need to let the clay dry slightly to reach the desired consistency. Spread the clay out on a plaster bat or canvas-covered board to facilitate drying. Alternatively, you can use a clay drying machine or pug mill to remove excess water and further process the clay.
8. **Knead and Wedge:** Once the clay reaches the desired consistency, knead and wedge it to remove any remaining air bubbles and ensure uniformity. This is an important step to prepare the clay for use in your ceramic projects.

"Short" clay refers to clay that lacks plasticity and is difficult to work with. It often crumbles or breaks apart easily and doesn't hold its shape well. Short clay can result from various factors, including improper clay formulation, insufficient mixing, or excessive drying. Reclaim clay can sometimes become short if it has been over-dried or improperly processed during reclamation. To remedy short clay, it may need to be rehydrated, mixed with more plastic clay, or processed again through the reclaiming process to improve its plasticity and workability.

This page titled [3.4: Storing and Reclaiming Clay](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

3.5: Troubleshooting

Types of Clay and Their Properties

1. Clay Cracking: Ensure compatibility of clay body with the intended firing temperature.
2. Poor Plasticity: Wedge clay thoroughly to align particles and improve workability.

Preparing and Recycling Clay

1. Difficulty Wedging: Try spiral or stack wedging techniques for easier clay conditioning.
2. Recycled Clay Too Dry/Wet: Adjust consistency by adding water or letting it dry to the desired moisture level.

The Science of Clay: From Plasticity to Vitreousness

1. Unsatisfactory Green Strength: Adjust the clay formulation to include more grog or sand for better structural integrity.
2. Vitrification Issues: Ensure the firing schedule is correct for the clay type to achieve proper vitrification.

Storing and Reclaiming Clay

1. Clay Drying Out: Store clay in airtight containers or wrap tightly in plastic to maintain moisture.
2. Contaminated Clay: Keep different clay bodies separate and label storage containers to avoid cross-contamination.

This page titled [3.5: Troubleshooting](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

4: Hand-Building Skills

Hand-building is a fundamental ceramic technique that allows artists to create unique, intricate forms without the use of a potter's wheel. This chapter explores three primary hand-building techniques: pinching, coil construction, and slab work. Each technique opens up a world of creative possibilities, offering flexibility and artistic freedom. In addition, we'll delve into surface texturing and embellishment to further personalize your creations.

Topic hierarchy
Featured articles
4.1: Pinching- The Most Ancient Technique
4.2: Coil Construction- Pottery and Sculpture
4.3: Slab Techniques- Functional and Sculptural Forms
4.4: Advanced Hand-building Techniques
4.5: Texturing and Surface Embellishment

This page titled [4: Hand-Building Skills](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

4.1: Pinching- The Most Ancient Technique

Fundamentals of Pinching and Its Historical Significance

- **Pinching Basics:** Pinching is one of the oldest ceramic techniques, dating back to prehistoric times when clay was first shaped into vessels by hand. It involves using fingers to press and shape a ball of clay into a desired form. The simplicity of the method makes it accessible to beginners and ideal for creating organic, expressive shapes. Early civilizations used pinching to make functional items like bowls, cups, and figurines, many of which are now significant archeological artifacts.

- **Why Pinching Matters:** Beyond its historical importance, pinching teaches the fundamentals of working with clay, such as understanding pressure, thickness, and shaping. It allows you to connect directly with the material, offering a tactile experience that forms the foundation of ceramic artistry. This technique is perfect for exploring creative freedom since there's no right or wrong way to pinch. Artists often use pinching to create both functional pottery and abstract sculptural forms.

Step-by-Step Guide to Creating Basic Forms with Pinching

1. Start with a ball of well-wedged clay about the size of your fist. Hold the ball in one hand and use your thumb to press into the center, creating a deep indentation.
2. Rotate the clay while pinching between your thumb and fingers, working evenly to form walls. Use light, consistent pressure to avoid cracking or uneven thickness.
3. Continue pinching and rotating until the walls are roughly 1/4 inch thick. Keep the rim smooth by compressing it gently with your fingers.
4. Refine the shape, adjusting the height and width as desired. For example, shape the base by gently pressing it against a flat surface for stability.

Hand-building with coils is a versatile technique that allows for the creation of a wide range of forms, from traditional vessels to complex sculptures. Here's how to create four distinct projects using the coil method: an amphora, a hollow sphere, a human bust, and a dog sculpture.

Hand-Building an Amphora

1. Base Creation

- Roll out a slab of clay for the base of the amphora. Cut a circular shape to your desired size.

2. Coiling the Body

- Roll long, even coils of clay. Attach the first coil to the edge of the base, smoothing the inside and outside joints with your fingers or a rib tool to strengthen the bond.

3. Building Upwards

- Continue adding coils, layer by layer. Gently tap the outside with a paddle to shape the amphora's body, tapering inwards as you build up to form the neck.

4. Forming the Neck and Opening

- For the neck, use thinner coils and narrow the opening gradually as you build up. Smooth and refine the neck's shape with your fingers and tools.

5. Adding Handles

- Roll out thicker coils for handles, shaping them into an arch. Attach the handles to each side of the amphora's neck, ensuring they're securely bonded.

6. Finishing Touches

- Smooth the surface with a rib tool and sponge. Add decorative elements or textures as desired. Allow to dry slowly before bisque firing.

Creating a Hollow Sphere

1. Starting with Coils

- Begin by rolling out even, medium-thickness coils. Form two spiral bases by coiling the clay onto itself, flattening slightly to create two hemispheres.

2. Building the Hemispheres

- Continue adding coils to each spiral, shaping the clay to form two bowl shapes. Smooth and blend each coil to the previous layer to strengthen the structure.

3. Joining the Halves

- Once both hemispheres are leather-hard, score and slip the edges and join them together. Blend the seam carefully inside and out to ensure it's well sealed.

4. Refining the Sphere

- Use a rib tool and sponges to smooth the entire surface of the sphere, maintaining its round shape. Patch any cracks or imperfections.

5. Final Touches

- Add any desired textures or decorative elements. Cut a small vent hole if the sphere is completely sealed, to prevent explosions during firing.

Sculpting a Human Bust

1. Building the Base and Neck

- Create a thick slab base. Start the neck with a thick coil, standing vertically, and attach it to the center of the base.

2. Forming the Shoulders and Torso

- Add horizontal coils to form the shoulders and upper torso. Use a paddle to shape and define the shoulder structure.

3. Sculpting the Head

- For the head, stack coils to form a rough skull shape. Gradually add more coils, shaping the facial features, skull, and back of the head.

4. Adding Features

- Use smaller coils and sculpting tools to define the eyes, nose, mouth, and ears. Add hair texture or accessories as desired.

5. Smoothing and Detailing

- Smooth the surface with a sponge and refine the details with modeling tools. Allow the bust to dry slowly before firing.

Creating a Dog Sculpture

1. Establishing the Base

- Roll a slab for the base. Form four thick coils for the legs and attach them to the corners of the base.

2. Building the Body

- Use larger coils to form the dog's body, layering and smoothing them to create the torso. Shape the body with tools to define the chest and hindquarters.

3. Sculpting the Head

- Stack and blend coils to form the head atop the neck. Use smaller pieces to model the muzzle, ears, and facial features. Detail the expression with sculpting tools.

4. Adding Limbs and Tail

- Refine the legs with additional coils for muscles and paws. Attach a coil for the tail, shaping it to convey movement or emotion.

5. Texturing and Final Touches

- Use tools and stamps to add fur texture throughout the sculpture. Detail the paws, facial features, and other characteristics specific to the breed or desired look.

6. Drying and Firing

- Allow the sculpture to dry thoroughly. Ensure it's completely dry before bisque firing. Consider glazing or painting after the first firing for added color or effects.

Each of these projects can be adjusted in scale and detail to suit your skill level and artistic vision. The coil method is highly adaptable, offering endless possibilities for creative expression.

How to Achieve Symmetry and Balance in Pinched Pieces

- Consistency in Pressure: Apply equal pressure with your fingers while rotating the piece to maintain uniform thickness. Uneven pinching can lead to lopsided or structurally weak forms.
- Visual Symmetry: Frequently check your piece from all angles, using a banding wheel if available, to ensure symmetry. Gently reshape areas that appear off-balance.
- Weight Balance: Make sure the base is sturdy enough to support the upper portion. Test the balance by placing the piece on a flat surface and adjusting as needed.
- Refinement: Smooth uneven areas with a damp sponge or rib tool, being careful not to over-wet the clay, which can weaken it.

Techniques for Adding Texture and Detail to Pinched Works

- Textures: Use tools such as wooden sticks, sponges, or household items like forks or leaves to add patterns to the surface. Press objects lightly into the clay to avoid distorting the shape.
- Carving: Once the piece reaches leather-hard stage, use carving tools to add intricate designs or subtract clay for a textured effect.
- Layering: Experiment with adding small pinched clay elements, such as handles or decorative attachments, for more complexity.
- Slip Decoration: Apply slip (liquid clay) with brushes or sponges to create contrasting textures or patterns. For example, use a darker slip on light clay for visual contrast.

Combining Pinched Elements with Other Hand-Building Techniques

- Hybrid Creations: Combine pinched bowls with coil-built bases or slab-constructed walls to create dynamic, multi-technique forms.
- Transitions: Score and slip all connecting surfaces to ensure a strong bond between pinched and other hand-built sections.
- Experimentation: Use pinching for organic, textured components and pair them with the clean lines of slab or coil work. For example, attach pinched handles to a slab-constructed mug for added character.
- Mixed Media: Incorporate other materials like metal or wood into pinched forms for unique artistic effects after firing.

This page titled [4.1: Pinching- The Most Ancient Technique](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

4.2: Coil Construction- Pottery and Sculpture

Preparing Coils for Construction: Tips for Consistency

- Even Thickness: Roll coils on a flat, smooth surface using consistent hand pressure to achieve uniform thickness. Uneven coils can lead to structural instability.
- Moisture Control: Keep your clay moist but not sticky to avoid cracks during rolling. Wrap coils in plastic while working to prevent drying.
- Coil Size: Tailor the thickness of the coils to the size of your project. For small pieces, use thin coils, while larger works require thicker coils for support.
- Tools: Use a wooden dowel or extruder to roll perfectly even coils if hand-rolling proves challenging.

Building Techniques for Functional Ware and Sculptural Forms

- Functional Ware: Start with a circular base and attach coils layer by layer, smoothing the interior and exterior seams for strength. Create shapes such as bowls, mugs, or jars.
- Sculptural Forms: Experiment with freeform construction, using coils to build asymmetrical or abstract shapes. Focus on the creative possibilities of layering and curving coils.
- Joining Coils: Score and slip each coil before attaching to ensure strong adhesion. Smooth the coils together for a seamless look or leave them visible for a decorative effect.
- Structure: Build gradually, allowing the lower layers to stiffen slightly before adding more coils to avoid collapse.

Strategies for Smoothing and Joining Coils

- Seam Blending: Use your fingers or a rib tool to blend seams between coils for a smooth, continuous surface.
- Slip Application: Apply slip to reinforce joints and fill small gaps between coils.
- Layer Stability: Work in sections, smoothing one layer before adding the next to maintain control over the form.
- Textural Effects: Leave seams partially visible or add intentional textures to highlight the coil technique.

Design Considerations for Coil-Built Pieces

- Shape and Form: Decide on the function or aesthetic of your piece before starting. For example, create a tall, narrow vase or a wide, open bowl.
- Pattern Play: Experiment with overlapping, spiraling, or weaving coils for decorative effects.
- Balance: Ensure the base is wide enough to support the height or weight of the piece. Test stability frequently during construction.
- Scaling Up: For larger works, build in stages and use a supporting armature if necessary to prevent sagging.

Finishing and Decorating Coil-Constructed Ceramics

- Surface Smoothing: Use a damp sponge or rib tool to refine the exterior surface after construction.
- Texturing: Add texture by pressing tools or objects into the coils before they stiffen.
- Color: Apply slips, underglazes, or oxides to highlight the natural coil patterns or create contrasting designs.
- Glazing: Use transparent glazes to preserve the visibility of decorative coils or opaque glazes for a smoother finish.

This page titled [4.2: Coil Construction- Pottery and Sculpture](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

4.3: Slab Techniques- Functional and Sculptural Forms

Slab Forms

Plate:

1. Prepare the Clay: Wedge the clay to remove air bubbles and ensure uniform consistency.
2. Roll Out the Clay: Place the clay on the canvas of the slab roller. Adjust the thickness setting according to your preference. Roll the clay through the slab roller to create an even slab.
3. Cut Out the Shape: Use a template or freehand cut to create the desired shape of the plate from the slab. You can use a round cutter or a knife to cut the clay.
4. Shape the Plate: Place the cut-out slab onto a ware board or plaster bat. Smooth the edges and refine the shape using a rib or your hands. Create a slight curve if desired for a shallow bowl effect.
5. Add Texture or Decoration: Use texture mats, stamps, or carving tools to add designs or patterns to the surface of the plate.
6. Dry and Bisque Fire: Allow the plate to dry slowly to avoid cracking. Once completely dry, bisque fire the plate in a kiln to around cone 04-06.

Vase:

1. Prepare the Clay: Wedge the clay to remove air bubbles and ensure uniform consistency.
2. Roll Out the Clay: Place the clay on the canvas of the slab roller. Adjust the thickness setting according to your preference. Roll the clay through the slab roller to create a long, even slab.
3. Cut and Shape the Cylinder: Cut out a rectangular section of the slab. Roll it into a cylinder, ensuring the edges meet evenly. Use a rib to smooth the seam and shape the cylinder.
4. Create the Base and Neck: Flatten one end of the cylinder to create the base of the vase. Pinch and pull the opposite end to form the neck of the vase, shaping it as desired.
5. Add Handles or Details: If desired, add handles, spouts, or other decorative elements to the vase. Attach them securely using slip and scoring techniques.
6. Dry and Bisque Fire: Allow the vase to dry slowly to avoid cracking. Once completely dry, bisque fire the vase in a kiln to around cone 04-06.

Clay Canvas:

1. Prepare the Clay: Wedge the clay to remove air bubbles and ensure uniform consistency.
2. Roll Out the Clay: Place the clay on the canvas of the slab roller. Adjust the thickness setting according to your preference. Roll the clay through the slab roller to create a large, even slab.
3. Cut Out the Shape: Use a large template or freehand cut to create the desired shape of the canvas from the slab. You can create rectangular, square, or irregular shapes.
4. Smooth and Finish the Surface: Use a rib or smoothing tool to ensure the surface of the clay canvas is even and free of imperfections. Smooth the edges and refine the shape as needed.
5. Add Texture or Decoration: Experiment with texture mats, stamps, or carving tools to add interest to the surface of the clay canvas. You can also create texture by pressing objects into the clay.
6. Dry and Bisque Fire: Allow the clay canvas to dry slowly and completely. Once dry, bisque fire the canvas in a kiln to around cone 04-06.

By following these step-by-step instructions, you can create a plate, vase, and clay canvas using a slab roller in your ceramics studio. Adjust the techniques and designs to suit your personal style and creative vision.

This page titled [4.3: Slab Techniques- Functional and Sculptural Forms](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

4.4: Advanced Hand-building Techniques

Exploring Hand-Building Beyond the Basics

Creating ceramic sculptures involves a variety of techniques, each suited to different forms and effects. Here are step-by-step plans for making ceramic sculptures using six distinct methods: soft armature, hard armature, press mold, slip cast mold, burnout, and paper clay.

Soft Armature

1. Design and Armature Creation

- Sketch your sculpture design. Construct a soft armature using materials like foam, fabric, or paper, shaped to support the desired form. Soft armatures are ideal for temporary support and can be left inside the sculpture if they will not interfere with firing.

2. Applying Clay

- Cover your armature with thin slabs or coils of clay, pressing firmly to adhere to the armature's shape. Ensure the clay is evenly applied to prevent warping or cracking.

3. Sculpting and Texturing

- With the basic form established, refine the sculpture's details using sculpting tools. Add textures or decorative elements as desired.

4. Drying

- Allow the sculpture to dry slowly and evenly. If possible, create vent holes to release any trapped air or moisture from the armature inside.

5. Firing

- Bisque fire the sculpture according to the clay body's specifications. The soft armature inside may burn out or remain intact based on the material used.

Hard Armature

1. Design and Armature Construction

- Plan your sculpture and construct a hard armature using metal wires, rods, or mesh. This structure must be removable or designed to withstand the firing temperature.

2. Applying Clay

- Press clay onto the armature, starting with thicker coils or slabs at the base and working up. Smooth and blend the clay as you build up the form.

3. Detailing

- Add details and textures with modeling tools. Keep the clay's thickness consistent to minimize stress during drying and firing.

4. Drying and Removing Armature

- Allow the sculpture to dry partially, then carefully remove the hard armature if not designed to be left in during firing. Finish drying slowly and completely.

5. Firing

- Bisque fire your sculpture. If the armature remains inside, ensure it's a material that can safely withstand firing temperatures.

Press Mold

1. Mold Preparation

- Create or acquire a bisque-fired press mold of your desired form. Apply a release agent to the mold's surface, such as a light layer of cornstarch or a commercial mold soap.

2. Pressing Clay

- Roll out a slab of clay to an even thickness. Press the clay into the mold, ensuring it conforms to all details. Trim excess clay from the edges.

3. Removing and Assembling

- Carefully remove the clay from the mold. Assemble any separate pieces using score-and-slip technique if your design requires it.

4. Finishing Touches

- Smooth seams and refine surfaces. Add any additional details or textures as desired.

5. Drying and Firing

- Allow the sculpture to dry thoroughly before bisque firing. Follow with glaze firing if desired.

Burnout

1. Creating a Burnable Form

- Sculpt your desired form using burnable materials such as wax, styrofoam, or organic matter.

2. Applying Clay

- Cover the form with a thin layer of clay. Consider adding a thicker outer layer or a mold box for larger pieces.

3. Creating Vent Holes

- Insert thin coils or rods to act as vent holes that will allow gases and air to escape during the burnout process.

4. Drying and Bisque Firing

- Allow the sculpture to dry completely. Bisque fire the piece, during which the internal form will burn away, leaving a hollow clay sculpture.

5. Finishing

- Clean the sculpture of any ash residue. Apply glazes or surface treatments as desired, then glaze fire if necessary.

This page titled [4.4: Advanced Hand-building Techniques](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

4.5: Texturing and Surface Embellishment

An Array of Tools and Methods for Adding Texture

- Tools for Texture: Everyday items like combs, forks, sponges, and leaves can add unique patterns to clay surfaces. Professional tools like rollers, mats, or stamps offer intricate designs for repeated use.
- Natural Materials: Press natural elements like shells, bark, or plants into the clay to create organic textures. For example, use ferns to imprint a delicate, detailed pattern.
- Custom Tools: Make your own texturing tools by carving patterns into wood or foam. Custom tools allow you to create unique, personalized designs for your work.
- Layering Techniques: Combine different tools and materials to layer textures, creating a complex and dynamic surface.

Techniques for Carving, Incising, and Stamping

- Carving: Use loop tools or fine carving tools to remove clay and create designs with depth. Carving works best when the clay is leather-hard to hold details without collapsing.
- Incising: Incising involves cutting shallow lines or patterns into the surface, ideal for delicate designs. Pair incising with colored slips to highlight the carved lines.
- Stamping: Press pre-made or handmade stamps into soft clay for repeated patterns. Experiment with pressing lightly for subtle effects or deeply for dramatic impressions.
- Combination Techniques: Mix carving and stamping for intricate, layered designs. For example, carve a border around a stamped pattern to frame it.

Creating Your Own Texture Tools from Found Objects

- Household Items: Repurpose objects like buttons, jar lids, or clothespins as texture tools. Their unique shapes and patterns add character to your work.
- Nature Finds: Collect leaves, branches, or stones to create natural textures. For instance, use a textured rock to roll over clay for a rugged surface.
- Handmade Tools: Carve designs into clay or wood to make stamps or rollers. These tools can be used repeatedly and customized to your artistic style.
- Experimental Tools: Test unconventional items, such as mesh fabric or corrugated cardboard, to discover unexpected textures.

Applying Slip, Underglaze, and Engobe for Color and Texture

- Slip Application: Slip, a mixture of clay and water, can be brushed, sponged, or splattered onto the surface for texture and color. Colored slips add contrast or highlight details.
- Underglazes: Underglazes are liquid colors applied to greenware or bisque-fired clay. They allow for detailed painting or pattern work before a transparent glaze is added.
- Engobe: Engobe is thicker than slip and can be used for textural effects, such as raised designs or embossed patterns. Apply with brushes, sponges, or syringes for precision.
- Layering Colors: Experiment with layering different colors of slips, underglazes, or engobes for rich, dynamic surfaces.

Layering Textures for Complex Surface Treatments

- Multi-Layered Techniques: Combine carving, slip application, and stamping to build layered textures that draw the viewer's eye.
- Contrasting Finishes: Pair rough textures with smooth areas for visual interest and tactile appeal. For example, carve a textured border around a polished center.
- Depth and Shadow: Use thicker layers of slip or engobe to create raised areas, adding depth and shadow to your designs.

- Glaze Interaction: Consider how textures will interact with glazes. Transparent glazes highlight carved or stamped textures, while opaque glazes can soften or mask them.

This page titled [4.5: Texturing and Surface Embellishment](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

5: The Potter's Wheel

[5.1: Introduction to the Wheel](#)

[5.2: Centering- The Foundation of Wheel Throwing](#)

[5.3: Creating Basic Forms- Cylinders, Bowls, Plates](#)

[5.4: Troubleshooting](#)

This page titled [5: The Potter's Wheel](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

5.1: Introduction to the Wheel

An overview of the potter's wheel, including its history, different types, and setting up the wheel-throwing environment. This section discusses selecting appropriate clay bodies for wheel throwing and introduces basic concepts and terminology. Ergonomics and correct body positioning are emphasized to prevent strain and improve efficiency.

History and Types of Potter's Wheels

Historical Origins: The potter's wheel dates back to approximately 3,000 BCE in Mesopotamia, marking a pivotal moment in ceramic history. Early wheels were manually operated by turning a horizontal disk, drastically increasing efficiency compared to hand-building. Over time, innovations like the kick wheel and electric wheel revolutionized pottery by offering greater speed and precision. Today's potters can choose from a variety of wheels tailored to their needs, from traditional kick wheels to high-tech, motorized options.

Types of Wheels

- Kick Wheel: Powered by the potter's foot, this wheel provides control over speed but requires physical effort.
- Electric Wheel: Operated by a motor, it allows for consistent speeds and is beginner-friendly.
- Hybrid Wheels: Combine kick and electric mechanisms, offering versatility for different throwing styles.
- Cultural Variations: Different regions have adapted wheels to suit local practices. For example, Japanese potters often use slower, traditional wheels for meticulous craftsmanship.
- Modern Wheels: Many electric wheels feature advanced controls, like adjustable speeds and reverse spinning, ideal for fine-tuning complex techniques.

Setting Up Your Wheel-Throwing Environment

- Space Considerations: A clean, well-organized space is critical for effective throwing. Ensure there's enough room to move comfortably around the wheel and access tools and materials. Place your wheel near a water source for easy cleanup.
- Flooring: Use a non-slip mat or install rubber flooring to prevent accidents caused by water or clay spills.
- Lighting: Proper lighting helps you see the details of your work clearly. Position a lamp above the wheel or use natural light to illuminate the workspace.
- Tool Accessibility: Arrange essential tools (sponges, ribs, trimming tools) within arm's reach of the wheel. Use a small shelf or tray for efficient organization.

Selecting Appropriate Clay Bodies for Wheel Throwing

- Clay Body Types: Not all clays are suitable for wheel throwing. Select clay with high plasticity, which makes it easier to shape and manipulate.
- Stoneware: A versatile, strong clay ideal for beginners and functional pottery.
- Porcelain: Smooth and delicate, but challenging due to its low plasticity.
- Earthenware: Easy to work with but less durable, often used for decorative pieces.
- Moisture Content: Properly hydrated clay is essential for smooth throwing. If clay is too dry, it can crack; if too wet, it will slump.
- Testing Clay: Wedge and throw a small amount of clay to evaluate its workability before committing to a large project.
- Recycling: Keep scraps of clay to recycle later, ensuring minimal waste in the studio.

This page titled [5.1: Introduction to the Wheel](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

5.2: Centering- The Foundation of Wheel Throwing

Centering clay on the wheel is foundational to successful wheel throwing. This subchapter outlines techniques and exercises to master centering, addressing common challenges and how to overcome them. The importance of consistent centering in achieving symmetrical forms is underscored, along with troubleshooting tips for off-center clay.

Techniques for Centering Clay on the Wheel

- Step 1: Coning Up and Down: Begin by coning the clay upwards into a tall shape, then pressing it back down into a squat form. This aligns the clay particles and prepares it for centering.
- Step 2: Anchoring Hands: Use one hand on the side of the clay to stabilize it while the other hand presses downward to center the clay. Keep your elbows tucked against your body for added leverage.
- Step 3: Gradual Pressure: Apply steady, even pressure to avoid pushing the clay off-center. Too much force can create wobbling or cause the clay to detach from the bat.
- Step 4: Visual Check: Watch for a smooth, even rotation. If the clay appears to wobble, adjust by applying gentle corrective pressure.

Here's a step-by-step guide to centering

1. Prepare Your Clay

- Wedge the Clay: Begin by wedging your clay on a work surface to remove air bubbles and ensure a uniform consistency. This kneading process also aligns the clay particles, which helps in the centering process.

2. Place the Clay on the Wheel

- Position the Clay: Place your wedged clay in the center of the bat (wheel head) as closely as possible. Use a firm motion to slap it down, ensuring it sticks to the bat.

3. Wet Your Hands and the Clay

- Lubricate: Wet your hands thoroughly with water or slip (clay mixed with water) to prevent the clay from sticking to your hands, which could cause it to pull off-center.

4. Start the Wheel

- Begin at a Medium Speed: Turn the wheel on at a medium speed. Too fast can be difficult to control for beginners, and too slow may not provide enough centrifugal force for effective centering.

5. Cone Up

- Press and Lift: Place your elbows into your sides to create stability, and press your hands into the clay. Use your left hand (if right-handed) to press on the side of the clay towards the center, while your right hand presses down on the top. This pressure should cause the clay to rise into a conical shape. The aim here is to align the clay particles and begin the process of centering.

6. Cone Down

- Push Down: With the clay coned up, keep your elbows anchored to your sides for stability, and use your palms and fingers to push the clay down into a squat, more centered shape. The left hand can provide inward pressure to assist in maintaining the clay's position on the wheel, while the right hand works from above to push the cone down.

7. Repeat the Process

- Cone Up and Down: Repeat the coning up and down process several times. This action helps to align the clay particles and ensures the clay is thoroughly centered. Each time, the clay should become easier to control and more centered.

8. Final Centering

- Smooth and Center: Once the clay feels somewhat centered, place one hand on the side of the clay and the other on top, applying gentle, steady pressure. Your hands should work in unison to prevent the clay from rising or falling. The goal is to have the clay spin smoothly with no wobble.

9. Check for Center

- Visual and Physical Check: Lightly touch the top and side of the spinning clay with a fingertip. A centered clay will feel smooth and even, with no bumps or vibrations. If you detect a wobble, wet your hands again, and apply pressure to correct it.

10. Secure the Base

- Seal to the Wheel: Finally, with the clay centered, use a sponge or your fingers to create a slight groove at the base of the clay where it meets the bat, and compress the clay towards the center. This step seals the clay to the bat, preventing it from sliding or wobbling when you begin to open and shape it.

Centering is a skill that improves with practice. Don't be discouraged by initial difficulties; even experienced potters sometimes struggle with centering, especially with larger pieces of clay. Patience and persistence are key.

Troubleshooting Off-Center Clay

- Correcting Mid-Throw: If the clay becomes off-center during throwing, stop shaping and re-center by applying pressure from the top and sides.

- Identifying Issues Early: Pay attention to signs like uneven spinning or a wobbling rim and correct them immediately.

- Checking Tools: Ensure the bat is securely attached to the wheel head and free of debris, which can contribute to off-center clay.

- Avoiding Dry Hands: Keep your hands and the clay well-lubricated with water or slip to maintain control and prevent jerking motions.

Centering clay on the potter's wheel is a fundamental skill in ceramics, crucial for creating symmetrical pieces.

Common Centering Challenges and How to Overcome Them

- Wobbling Clay: Often caused by uneven pressure or poorly wedged clay. Correct by coning the clay up and down multiple times to realign the particles.

- Sliding Clay: If the clay slides off the wheel, it may not be securely attached. Re-center it by pressing firmly and using slip as an adhesive.

- Off-Center Start: Begin with the clay positioned as close to the center of the wheel as possible before turning it on. A misaligned start makes centering much harder.

- Overworking: Avoid excessive coning, which can over-wet the clay and weaken its structure.

Exercises to Improve Centering Skills

- Practice with Small Amounts: Start with small balls of clay (1-2 pounds) to build confidence and control. Gradually increase the clay size as you improve.

- Close-Eyes Technique: Practice centering with your eyes closed to develop a tactile understanding of the clay's movement.

- Repeated Coning: Spend a session repeatedly coning up and down without moving to the next step. This builds muscle memory and improves particle alignment.

- Feedback from a Mentor: Work alongside a skilled potter who can provide hands-on guidance and corrections.

The Importance of Consistent Centering in Advanced Throwing

- Foundation for Complex Forms: Proper centering ensures stability and balance, which is critical for taller or intricate pieces like vases or teapots.

- Symmetry and Aesthetics: A centered base results in even walls and a well-proportioned final piece. Off-center clay can lead to distorted shapes.

- Efficiency: Once centering becomes second nature, you can focus more on shaping and creativity, speeding up your workflow.

- Structural Integrity: Poorly centered clay is prone to collapse or cracking, particularly during drying and firing stages.

This page titled [5.2: Centering- The Foundation of Wheel Throwing](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

5.3: Creating Basic Forms- Cylinders, Bowls, Plates

The process of creating basic wheel-thrown forms is detailed, starting with cylinders as the basis for various shapes. Techniques for shaping bowls and throwing plates are covered, along with tips for managing thickness and trimming. This section lays the groundwork for more complex forms, emphasizing the importance of mastering these foundational shapes.

Step-by-Step Guide to Throwing Cylinders: The Foundation of All Forms

- Step 1: Center the Clay: Begin with well-centered clay. A cylinder requires precise centering as it forms the basis for most wheel-thrown shapes. Ensure the clay spins smoothly without wobbling.
- Step 2: Open the Clay: Using your thumbs, press into the center of the clay to create a hollow. Gradually widen the opening, leaving the base about 1/4-inch thick for strength.
- Step 3: Pull Up the Walls: Place one hand inside and the other outside the clay. Apply steady, even pressure to lift the walls upward. Work slowly to maintain an even thickness.
- Step 4: Refine the Shape: Use a rib tool to smooth the walls and define the cylindrical form. Keep the rim level by compressing it gently after each pull.

Techniques for Shaping Bowls from a Centered Cylinder

- Step 1: Open Wider: After centering, open the clay into a wider base to set the foundation for the bowl's shape. Keep the movement gradual to avoid distorting the clay.
- Step 2: Curve the Walls: Support the exterior with one hand while pressing the inside upward and outward to create the bowl's curve. Use soft pressure to form smooth, flowing lines.
- Step 3: Prevent Collapsing: Slow the wheel and focus on even pressure. Compress the rim regularly to maintain structural integrity as the walls thin out.
- Step 4: Final Shaping: Use a rib tool to refine the curve and smooth the surface. A flexible rib works well for achieving gentle, continuous curves.

Throwing a Bowl

1. Opening the Clay

- With the centered clay spinning on the wheel, press your thumbs into the center to open it. Keep the bottom thickness in mind (about 1/4 inch is good).

2. Widening the Base

- Place your fingers inside the opening and begin to widen the base by pressing outward gently, keeping the wheel speed consistent.

3. Pulling Up the Walls

- Wet your hands. Place one hand inside and one outside the clay. Gently squeeze the clay while slowly moving your hands upward to raise the walls. Repeat as necessary to achieve the desired height and thickness.

4. Shaping the Bowl

- To shape the bowl, support the outside with one hand and gently press the inside against this hand to create the curve of the bowl. The shape can be refined by varying the pressure and speed of the wheel.

5. Trimming the Rim

- Use a wooden or metal rib to smooth and shape the rim, making it even and removing any excess clay.

6. Cutting and Removing

- Slow the wheel and cut the bowl from the wheel head with a wire tool, sliding it underneath. Carefully remove the bowl and set it aside to leather-hard before trimming the foot.

Throwing a Cup

1. Opening the Clay

- After centering, press down into the center with your thumb or fingers to open the clay, leaving a thicker base for strength.

2. Raising the Walls

- With fingers inside the clay and a sponge or your other hand outside, gently squeeze and lift the clay upwards to form the walls. Keep the walls even in thickness.

3. Shaping the Cup

- As the walls grow taller, support them from the outside and gently curve the inside to form the cup shape. Ensure the lip is smooth and even for a pleasant drinking surface.

4. Forming the Foot

- Use a trimming tool to define a foot ring at the base of the cup. This step can be done at the leather-hard stage as well.

5. Finishing the Rim

- Smooth the rim with a sponge or a rib, ensuring it is comfortable to drink from.

6. Cutting and Removing

- Slow the wheel, cut the cup free with a wire tool, and carefully lift it from the wheel to dry to leather-hard before trimming, if necessary.

Throwing a Plate

1. Opening and Compressing

- After centering, open the clay wide and shallow, keeping the base thicker. Compress the base with your fingers or a rib to avoid S-cracks.

2. Forming the Plate

- With both hands, gently pull the clay outward from the center, keeping the movement smooth and even to widen the plate. Keep the base compressed and flat.

3. Shaping the Rim

- Support the outer edge of the plate with one hand, and use the other to shape and lift the rim slightly. This defines the edge of the plate and prevents warping.

4. Smoothing the Surface

- Use a rib to smooth the surface of the plate, ensuring it is flat and even. This also compresses the clay further, which is crucial for plates.

5. Cutting and Removing

- Carefully cut the plate from the wheel head with a wire tool, and remove it using batts if available, to avoid distorting the shape. Allow it to dry to leather-hard before trimming the foot, if desired.

Tips for Throwing Plates and Wide Forms

- Step 1: Center and Flatten: After centering, press down firmly with your fingers to create a wide, flat base. Compress the surface with a rib to prevent cracks.

- Step 2: Define the Rim: Shape the edges by lifting or slightly flaring the rim to create a distinct boundary. A small ridge helps contain food or liquids in functional plates.

- Step 3: Maintain Uniform Thickness: Use a rib to smooth and even out the plate's surface. Uneven thickness can lead to warping or cracking during firing.

- Step 4: Dry with Support: Allow plates to dry on a flat, porous surface like plaster to reduce the risk of warping. Cover loosely with plastic for even drying.

Thickness Control and Trimming Excess Clay

- Preventing Thick Bases: Use a needle tool to measure the base's thickness while throwing. Trim excess clay from the bottom at the leather-hard stage to lighten the piece.
- Consistent Walls: Check the walls frequently by pinching gently to gauge thickness. Thicker areas can be thinned by repeating the pulling process with light pressure.
- Refining with Trimming Tools: Once leather-hard, use trimming tools to smooth and shape the bottom. A defined foot adds both stability and aesthetic appeal.
- Avoid Over-Thinning: Ensure that walls remain strong enough to support the piece during handling and firing. Pieces that are too thin are prone to collapse or cracking.

This page titled [5.3: Creating Basic Forms- Cylinders, Bowls, Plates](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

5.4: Troubleshooting

Centering: The Foundation of Wheel Throwing

1. Clay Keeps Going Off-Center:

- Cause: Uneven pressure or improper hand positioning.
- Solution: Anchor your elbows to your torso to stabilize your movements. Apply equal pressure from both hands when coning up and down. Ensure the clay is well-wedged to remove air bubbles that can destabilize it. Recenter by starting again with steady, gentle movements.
- Tip: Keep the clay moist to reduce friction between your hands and the surface. Reapply water or slip if it begins to dry out.

2. Wrist Strain:

- Cause: Poor posture or over-reliance on wrist movements rather than using your whole arm.
- Solution: Sit with a straight back and your elbows supported by your thighs or tucked into your sides. Use your entire upper body to press and guide the clay, rather than isolating the movement to your wrists.
- Tip: Stretch and warm up your wrists before a throwing session, and take breaks to avoid fatigue.

Creating Basic Forms: Cylinders, Bowls, Plates

1. Walls Too Thin:

- Cause: Overworking the clay or applying uneven pressure during pulling.
- Solution: Pull with consistent, gentle pressure and avoid over-thinning the walls. Focus on lifting evenly from the bottom to the top in each pull.
- Tip: Check wall thickness regularly with your fingers or a caliper to ensure uniformity.

2. Collapsing Forms:

- Cause: Weak structural support from uneven walls or too much water.
- Solution: Compress the base and walls during every step to strengthen the structure. Avoid over-wetting the clay, which can weaken it.
- Tip: Use a rib tool to gently compress and refine the walls after pulling them up, ensuring they remain even and stable.

Advanced Forms: Lidded Containers, Teapots, Vases

1. Lid Doesn't Fit:

- Cause: Improper measurement or lack of allowance for shrinkage during drying and firing.
- Solution: Use a caliper to measure the gallery and match the lid's size exactly. Account for shrinkage by making the lid slightly larger than the opening.
- Tip: Test the fit when the pieces are leather-hard and make adjustments by sanding or trimming as needed.

2. Teapot Spout Drips:

- Cause: Poor spout alignment or a rounded spout lip.
- Solution: Ensure the spout is angled slightly upward and the lip is sharp enough to cleanly cut off the flow of liquid. Test the pour before firing and make adjustments if necessary.
- Tip: Use a small coil of clay to reinforce the base of the spout for added stability.

General Wheel-Throwing Challenges

1. Uneven Drying Leading to Cracks:

- Cause: Uneven wall thickness or improper drying conditions.

- Solution: Ensure consistent wall thickness during throwing. Dry pieces slowly and evenly by covering them loosely with plastic to prevent rapid moisture loss.

- Tip: Place pieces on a porous surface like a plaster bat to help draw out moisture uniformly from the base.

2. Warping During Firing:

- Cause: Uneven compression or tension in the clay body.

- Solution: Compress the base thoroughly and ensure all areas of the piece are evenly supported during drying and firing.

- Tip: Use a flat shelf or kiln props to prevent sagging or deformation during firing.

3. Clay Detaches from the Bat:

- Cause: Inadequate adhesion at the start or excess water during throwing.

- Solution: Firmly press the clay onto the bat and ensure the bottom is sealed to the wheel head. Avoid over-wetting the base while working.

- Tip: Use a sponge to remove excess water from the bat and base if slippage occurs.

4. Trimming Issues:

- Cause: Uneven leather-hard stage or improperly centered trimming.

- Solution: Wait until the piece is evenly leather-hard before trimming. Re-center the piece carefully on the wheel and secure it with clay lumps or a Giffin Grip.

- Tip: Lightly score the surface before trimming to create a guideline for consistent removal.

This page titled [5.4: Troubleshooting](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

6: Advanced Forms on the Wheel

6.1: Advanced Forms- Lidded Containers, Teapots, Vases

This page titled [6: Advanced Forms on the Wheel](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

6.1: Advanced Forms- Lidded Containers, Teapots, Vases

Moving beyond basic forms, this subchapter guides readers through creating complex and multi-part forms such as lidded containers and teapots. It covers the assembly of spouts, handles, and lids, along with strategies for throwing large or intricate vases. Advanced techniques for unique forms and combining thrown elements with hand-built components are also explored.

Introduction to Altering Thrown Forms for Variety

- Fluting and Faceting: Use a carving tool or wire to cut grooves or facets into the walls of a leather-hard cylinder for decorative effects.
- Asymmetry: After throwing, gently push or reshape the form to create intentional asymmetry. For example, tilt a bowl's rim for a dynamic look.
- Adding Features: Attach hand-built elements like handles, spouts, or decorative coils to expand the functionality or aesthetics of your piece.
- Combining Forms: Throw multiple components, such as a cylinder and a bowl, and assemble them to create complex shapes like tiered vases or lidded containers.

Planning and Executing Multi-part Forms Like Lidded Containers

- Step 1: Throwing the Base: Begin by throwing the container body with a slight inward taper to ensure the lid fits snugly. Create a gallery (a recessed rim) for the lid to sit on.
- Step 2: Throwing the Lid: Throw the lid as a shallow, inverted bowl or flat disc. Use a caliper to measure the diameter of the gallery and match the lid size accordingly.
- Step 3: Refining the Fit: Once both parts are leather-hard, test the fit and make adjustments by trimming or sanding. The lid should sit securely without wobbling.
- Step 4: Adding a Knob: Attach a small, decorative knob to the lid for easy handling. Score and slip the attachment point to ensure a strong bond.

Throwing a Teapot

1. Throwing the Body

- Start by throwing a basic cylindrical form with a slightly bulged bottom and a narrow top. This will be the body of the teapot.

2. Forming the Spout and Lid

- Throw a spout separately on the wheel by creating a small, tapered cylinder, then slicing it diagonally while soft to create the pouring end. The lid can be thrown as a small, inverted bowl that fits the opening of the body.

3. Attaching the Spout

- Score and slip the area where the spout will attach to the body. Firmly attach the spout, ensuring a tight seal. Blend the connection with a small clay coil if necessary.

4. Creating and Attaching a Handle

- Pull a handle from a lump of clay or roll a coil and shape it into a handle. Score and slip the attachment points and attach the handle opposite the spout.

5. Trimming and Finishing

- Once the body is leather-hard, trim the bottom to create a foot. Make sure the lid fits well. Clean up any rough spots and ensure the spout's attachment is smooth and functional.

6. Drying and Firing

- Allow the teapot to dry slowly to prevent cracking. Bisque fire, glaze, and then glaze fire according to your clay body and glaze specifications.

Techniques for Creating Large or Complex Vases

- Throw in Sections: For large vases, throw the base and upper sections separately, then join them at the leather-hard stage. This reduces stress on the clay and improves control.
- Use Internal Supports: Insert foam or other supports while throwing tall pieces to prevent collapse. Remove them carefully once the form stiffens.
- Shape Variations: Experiment with necks, flared rims, or bulbous bases for unique silhouettes. Use calipers to maintain symmetry when shaping complex curves.
- Decorative Additions: Apply slip trailing, carving, or stamped patterns to elevate the vase's design. Consider adding handles or sculptural elements for extra detail.

Advanced Wheel-Throwing Techniques for Unique Forms

- Double-Walled Pieces: Throw a form with a hollow interior, creating intricate designs like perforations or patterns on the outer wall.
- Closed Forms: Seal the top of a thrown piece, then reshape it into abstract or sculptural forms. Use these for decorative objects or functional items like jars.
- Assembling Thrown Parts: Combine multiple thrown components, such as stacked cylinders or joined spheres, to create elaborate forms.
- Layered Glazing: Plan for advanced glazing techniques, like dipping or spraying multiple layers, to enhance the complexity of your finished pieces.

Combining Thrown Elements with Hand-Built Components

- Hand-Built Bases: Attach a slab-constructed base to a wheel-thrown form for added texture or structural support.
- Sculptural Details: Incorporate hand-built flowers, animals, or abstract shapes onto thrown vessels for decorative appeal.
- Functional Additions: Use hand-built spouts, handles, or feet to customize thrown forms for specific functions.
- Mixed Techniques: Experiment with combining pinched, coiled, and slab-built elements onto thrown forms to create hybrid designs.

This page titled [6.1: Advanced Forms- Lidded Containers, Teapots, Vases](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

7: Surface Design Techniques

7.1: Engobes and Slip Decoration

7.1.1: Underglazes

7.1.2: Oxides and Stains

7.2: Carving and Incising

7.3: Glaze Application Techniques

7.4: Using Wax Resist and Other Masking Techniques

7.5: Troubleshooting

This page titled [7: Surface Design Techniques](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

SECTION OVERVIEW

7.1: Engobes and Slip Decoration

7.1.1: Underglazes

7.1.2: Oxides and Stains

This page titled [7.1: Engobes and Slip Decoration](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

7.1.1: Underglazes

This page titled [7.1.1: Underglazes](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

7.1.2: Oxides and Stains

Georgie's Mason Stains and ceramic grade raw oxides and carbonates are components used in the creation and application of color in ceramics. Both offer unique possibilities and methods for artists and ceramists to add hues, shades, and special effects to their works. Understanding how to use these materials can greatly expand the range of aesthetic outcomes in ceramic art.

Georgie's Mason Stains

Georgie's Mason Stains are manufactured colorants designed for use in ceramics. They are stable, pre-mixed ceramic stains that can be added to glazes, slips, and clay bodies to achieve a wide array of colors. Mason Stains are formulated to be consistent and reliable, providing vibrant or subtle colors depending on the user's application method.

How to Use:

1. In Glazes: Mason Stains can be mixed into a clear base glaze to tint or color the glaze. The amount added varies depending on the desired intensity.
2. In Slips: Similar to glaze application, Mason Stains can be added to slips for decorating techniques such as sgraffito or inlay.
3. In Clay Bodies: Adding Mason Stains directly to clay bodies can color the clay itself, allowing for colored clay work and nerikomi techniques.
4. Underglazes: You can create your own underglazes by mixing Mason Stains with a frit (to help with melt) and a flux.

Ceramic Grade Raw Oxides and Carbonates

Raw oxides and carbonates are the fundamental sources of color in many ceramic materials. They can be used in their raw form to create glazes, slips, or clay bodies or added to existing glazes to alter color.

Commonly Used Oxides and Carbonates for Color:

- Cobalt Oxide/Carbonate: Deep blue
- Copper Oxide/Carbonate: Green in oxidation, red in reduction
- Iron Oxide (Red, Yellow, Black): Browns, tans, and greens depending on the form and concentration
- Manganese Dioxide: Purples, browns, or blacks
- Rutile: Variegated golds and browns
- Tin Oxide: White, used primarily as an opacifier but can also affect color
- Chrome Oxide: Greens
- Nickel Oxide: Gray to black, can produce blues and purples in certain bases

How to Use:

1. Test Firing: The effect of oxides and carbonates can vary widely based on firing conditions, glaze composition, and concentration. Always test fire samples to determine the final color.
2. Mixing with Glazes: Raw oxides and carbonates can be mixed into glazes to tint or color them. It's crucial to sieve the glaze mixture to ensure even distribution.
3. Coloring Slips: For surface decoration, oxides and carbonates can be added to slip, applied to greenware or bisqueware, and then covered with a clear glaze.
4. Direct Application: They can be applied directly onto clay surfaces as washes, though this method requires careful control of concentration and firing atmosphere to achieve consistent results.

Tips for Use:

- Safety: Always wear appropriate safety gear when handling raw materials, as they can be hazardous if inhaled or come into contact with skin.

- Compatibility: Check compatibility with your clay body and firing temperature. Some colors change or become unstable at high temperatures.
- Concentration: Start with lower concentrations and increase as needed; it's easier to add more than to correct an overly intense color.
- Interaction: Be aware that oxides and carbonates can interact with other components in a glaze or clay body, sometimes producing unexpected results.

Both Mason Stains and raw oxides and carbonates provide a broad palette for ceramists to explore. The choice between them often depends on the specific requirements of the project, desired color outcomes, and the artist's personal preference for mixing and application methods.

This page titled [7.1.2: Oxides and Stains](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

7.2: Carving and Incising

Tools and Techniques for Effective Ceramic Carving

- Tools: Use loop tools for bold, deep carvings and needle tools for fine lines. Ribbon tools and wire tools offer versatility for medium-depth carving.
- Clay Stage: Carving is best done at the leather-hard stage when the clay is firm but still workable. Carving on dry clay can result in cracks or chips.
- Depth Control: Start shallow and deepen gradually to maintain control over the design and prevent breaking through the clay wall.
- Maintenance: Keep tools sharp and clean to ensure precise lines and reduce dragging.

Incising Designs: From Fine Lines to Deep Textures

- Fine Lines: Use incising to add delicate details like patterns, lettering, or outlines. Light pressure is key to keeping lines clean and crisp.
- Deep Textures: For bold designs, apply greater pressure with a loop or ribbon tool. Deep incising adds dimension and tactile appeal.
- Layering Effects: Combine fine and deep incising to create contrast within a single design. For instance, use deep cuts for borders and fine lines for interior details.
- Enhancing with Slip: Fill incised lines with colored slip to highlight the design and create additional contrast.

Carving as a Method for Storytelling and Surface Narrative

- Narrative Potential: Carving allows artists to depict scenes, symbols, or abstract designs that tell a story or evoke emotion.
- Cultural Significance: Many traditional pottery styles use carving for storytelling, such as Native American or African designs that incorporate symbolic patterns.
- Texture and Shadow: Deep carvings create shadows that enhance the visual impact of the piece, making the story more dynamic.
- Personalization: Use carving to add signatures, personal symbols, or motifs that connect the work to its creator or context.

Combining Carving with Other Decorative Methods

- Slip and Engobe: Apply slip before carving to add color and contrast. For example, carve through a black slip to reveal white clay beneath.
- Glazing: Enhance carved designs with transparent glazes that highlight texture and depth.
- Stamps and Stencils: Combine carving with stamped or stenciled elements for layered, intricate surfaces.
- Additive Techniques: Pair carving with applied textures, such as slip trailing or attached clay elements, for a multidimensional effect.

Finishing and Smoothing Techniques Post-Carving

- Cleaning Up Lines: Use a soft brush or sponge to remove clay crumbs and smooth edges after carving.
- Refining Details: For intricate designs, use fine tools like dental picks or needle tools to refine small areas.
- Polishing: Lightly burnish carved areas with a smooth stone or metal tool for a softer, more finished look.
- Glaze Testing: Test glazes on carved samples to ensure the design remains visible and doesn't fill in fine details.

This page titled [7.2: Carving and Incising](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

7.3: Glaze Application Techniques

Understanding Glaze Properties and Selection

- Purpose of Glaze: Glaze adds a functional coating that makes ceramics waterproof and enhances their aesthetic appeal. It can range from glossy to matte and transparent to opaque, depending on its formulation.
- Types of Glaze: Glossy glazes reflect light for a shiny finish, matte glazes create a subdued surface, and satin glazes provide a balance between the two. Transparent glazes allow underlying designs to show through, while opaque glazes cover the surface entirely.
- Firing Compatibility: Choose glazes that match the firing temperature of your clay body. Low-fire glazes (Cone 06-04) are often brighter, while high-fire glazes (Cone 5-10) yield more subtle, earthy tones.
- Testing: Always test glazes on your specific clay body to observe interactions and ensure the desired result. Variations in firing temperature and atmosphere can significantly affect glaze outcomes.

Techniques for Applying Glazes: Dipping, Spraying, Brushing

- Dipping: Submerge the piece in a bucket of glaze for an even coat. Dipping is efficient for covering large areas but requires careful timing to avoid excessive thickness. Hold the piece by an unglazed portion or use tongs to minimize marks.
- Spraying: Use a spray gun or airbrush for controlled, even application. Spraying is ideal for layering glazes or achieving gradient effects. Protect surrounding areas with a spray booth or drop cloths.
- Brushing: Apply glazes with soft, high-quality brushes for detailed designs or smaller surfaces. Use multiple thin coats to achieve even coverage, allowing each coat to dry before applying the next.
- Sponging: Dab glaze onto the surface with a sponge to create textured or mottled effects. This technique adds depth and variety to the finish.

The Art of Layering Glazes for Multi-Dimensional Effects

- Combining Colors: Layer different glazes to create unique color interactions and visual depth. For example, a transparent glaze over a matte glaze can produce a striking contrast.
- Overlap Effects: Apply one glaze over another in overlapping strokes or dips. The overlap areas often create unexpected textures or colors as the glazes react during firing.
- Controlled Application: Use tools like brushes, sponges, or spray guns to control the placement and thickness of each glaze layer. Thin layers produce subtle transitions, while thicker layers create bold contrasts.
- Testing and Experimentation: Test glaze combinations on small test tiles to predict outcomes. Document your process to replicate successful results.

Tips for Masking and Resist Techniques in Glazing

- Wax Resist: Apply wax resist to areas you want to remain unglazed. Once dry, the wax repels glaze, creating clean, defined patterns. For example, use it to leave a foot ring unglazed.
- Stencils and Tape: Use stencils or masking tape to block off areas and create sharp, geometric designs. Remove the stencils or tape before firing to reveal clean lines.
- Natural Resists: Experiment with materials like leaves or lace as resists. Dip or spray glaze over the material, then remove it to reveal intricate patterns.
- Layering with Resists: Combine resist techniques with layering to create complex, multi-dimensional surfaces. For example, apply a resist design, glaze over it, and then add another layer of glaze after removing the resist.

Troubleshooting Common Glaze Application Issues

- Glaze Too Thick: Overly thick glaze can lead to dripping or crawling during firing. Thin the glaze with water or adjust your dipping time to prevent this issue.

- Glaze Too Thin: If the glaze appears patchy or uneven, apply additional coats or adjust the application method (e.g., longer dips or more brush strokes).
- Pinholing: Small holes in the glaze surface are caused by trapped air or gases. Ensure proper bisque firing to eliminate residual moisture and allow slow cooling during glaze firing.
- Crawling: Glaze peeling or separating can result from dirty bisqueware or incompatible glaze formulas. Clean the surface thoroughly before application and check glaze consistency.

This page titled [7.3: Glaze Application Techniques](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

7.4: Using Wax Resist and Other Masking Techniques

The Principles of Wax Resist in Ceramic Decoration

- Definition: Wax resist is a liquid wax applied to specific areas of a ceramic surface to repel glaze or slip. It creates clean, unglazed patterns or designs.
- Applications: Use wax resist to leave foot rings unglazed, protect intricate underglaze designs, or create bold contrasts between glazed and unglazed surfaces.
- Timing: Apply wax resist to bisqueware or leather-hard clay before glazing. Allow it to dry completely before adding any glaze or slip.
- Removal: Wax resist burns off in the kiln during firing, leaving behind the original surface underneath.

Creative Applications of Resist Techniques for Intricate Designs

- Layered Patterns: Use wax resist to block off areas, apply glaze, and repeat with additional layers for multi-dimensional designs.
- Combining with Stenciling: Pair wax resist with stencils to create precise, intricate motifs. For example, use a stencil to apply wax in a floral pattern, then glaze the surrounding area.
- Edge Control: Apply wax along the edges of a piece to create defined lines or borders between different glazes.
- Highlighting Texture: Use wax resist to protect textured areas from glaze, emphasizing the natural surface of the clay.

Exploring Alternative Masking Materials and Methods

- Tape: Masking or painter's tape can create straight lines or geometric shapes. Use a craft knife to cut custom designs.
- Natural Materials: Leaves, lace, or paper cutouts can serve as temporary masks. Apply glaze over these materials, then remove them to reveal intricate designs.
- Liquid Latex: Latex can be applied like wax resist but is peel-able, allowing for more flexibility in complex designs.
- Overlapping Techniques: Combine multiple masking materials, such as tape and wax resist, for layered, dynamic effects.

Combining Resist with Other Decorative Techniques for Unique Effects

- Slip and Resist: Apply slip to leather-hard clay, then use wax resist to create patterns before glazing. This adds texture and depth to the final piece.
- Layered Glazes: Apply a base glaze, add wax resist designs, and then layer another glaze for a dimensional look. The resist protects the base layer from the second glaze.
- Sgraffito and Resist: Combine resist with sgraffito by carving through slip after applying wax to specific areas. This creates both texture and color contrast.
- Creative Exploration: Experiment with unconventional combinations of resists, glazes, and other techniques to develop a signature style.

Safety and Cleanup Tips for Working with Resists

- Ventilation: Work in a well-ventilated area to avoid inhaling fumes from wax resist or latex.
 - Cleanup: Clean brushes and tools immediately after applying wax or latex to prevent residue buildup. Use warm water and soap for wax resist or a designated solvent for latex.
 - Safety Gear: Wear gloves to protect your hands from wax or chemicals. Ensure you don't leave resist materials on your skin for prolonged periods.
 - Storage: Store resist materials in sealed containers to prevent drying out. Keep them away from heat sources, as wax and latex are flammable.
-

This page titled [7.4: Using Wax Resist and Other Masking Techniques](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

7.5: Troubleshooting

Engobes and Slip Decoration

1. Slip Peeling Off:

- Cause: Slip doesn't adhere properly to the clay surface due to inconsistent moisture levels or insufficient scoring.
- Solution: Apply slip to leather-hard clay, as it provides the ideal balance of moisture for bonding. Score and slip the area if attaching layers.
- Tip: Avoid over-wetting the clay surface before applying the slip, as excess moisture can weaken the bond.
- Prevention: Test your slip on sample pieces to ensure compatibility with your clay body and firing temperature.

2. Cracking:

- Cause: The moisture content of the slip is too different from the clay body, causing uneven shrinkage.
- Solution: Adjust the moisture levels of your slip to match the clay body. Let the slip settle slightly before application to reduce excess water.
- Tip: Avoid applying thick layers of slip, as they are more prone to cracking during drying or firing.
- Prevention: Allow the piece to dry slowly and evenly to minimize stress on the surface.

3. Color Burnout:

- Cause: The firing temperature exceeds the stability range of the colorants in the slip.
- Solution: Test slips at different firing ranges to identify the optimal temperature for color retention.
- Tip: Use oxides or stains with proven stability at your desired firing range.
- Prevention: Keep detailed firing records to track which formulas perform best under specific conditions.

Carving and Incising

1. Tool Dragging:

- Cause: Dull tools or excessive pressure can lead to uneven lines and jagged edges.
- Solution: Keep tools sharp and well-maintained. Use light, consistent pressure while carving.
- Tip: Practice carving on scraps of leather-hard clay to refine your technique.
- Prevention: Regularly clean and sharpen tools to ensure smooth operation.

2. Detail Loss During Firing:

- Cause: The edges of carvings soften during firing due to the vitrification process.
- Solution: Carve slightly deeper than intended to account for this softening effect.
- Tip: Use firmer clay bodies with less shrinkage for pieces requiring detailed carvings.
- Prevention: Test firing with small samples to gauge how much detail is retained.

3. Surface Cracking Around Carvings:

- Cause: Carving too deeply weakens the structure, especially in thinner areas of the piece.
- Solution: Avoid carving too close to edges or into walls that are too thin. Reinforce areas around deep carvings with additional clay if necessary.
- Tip: Compress the surface with a rib tool before and after carving to reduce stress on the clay body.
- Prevention: Allow the piece to dry slowly and evenly to minimize cracking.

Glaze Application Techniques

1. Glaze Too Thick or Thin:

- Cause: Incorrect application or inconsistent glaze consistency.
- Solution: For dipping, adjust your dipping time to achieve an even thickness. For brushing, use multiple thin coats rather than a single thick coat.
- Tip: Mix glazes thoroughly before application to avoid settling of materials.
- Prevention: Use test tiles to determine the ideal application thickness for each glaze.

2. Glaze Crawling:

- Cause: Contamination on the bisque surface or uneven application of glaze.
- Solution: Clean the bisqueware with a damp sponge to remove dust or oils. Apply glaze evenly and avoid pooling in certain areas.
- Tip: Add a small amount of bentonite to the glaze to improve adhesion.
- Prevention: Avoid handling bisqueware with greasy hands or applying overly thick glazes.

3. Pinholing in Glaze:

- Cause: Trapped air or gases escape during firing, leaving small holes in the glaze surface.
- Solution: Slow down the firing schedule, especially during the early stages, to allow gases to escape gradually.
- Tip: Ensure proper bisque firing to remove residual moisture and organic material from the clay body.
- Prevention: Maintain a steady cooling rate in the kiln to prevent sudden temperature changes.

This page titled [7.5: Troubleshooting](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

8: Understanding Glazes

8.1: Introduction to Glaze Chemistry

8.1.1: Glazy.org

8.1.2: Glaze Logbook

8.2: Glaze Characteristics and Types

8.3: Triaxial Glaze Testing

8.4: Formulating Glazes for Specific Effects

8.5: Making and Using Glaze Test Tiles

8.6: Keeping a Kiln Log

8.7: Troubleshooting

This page titled [8: Understanding Glazes](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

SECTION OVERVIEW

8.1: Introduction to Glaze Chemistry

Basic Components of Glazes and Their Interactions

- Silica (Glass Former): Silica is the primary ingredient responsible for forming the glassy surface of a glaze. It melts at high temperatures, creating a smooth, glossy coating. Without sufficient silica, a glaze may lack shine or durability.
- Fluxes (Melting Agents): Fluxes like feldspar, calcium carbonate, or lithium carbonate lower the melting point of silica, enabling it to fuse during firing. The type of flux affects the glaze's texture and gloss.
- Alumina (Stabilizer): Alumina adds viscosity to molten glaze, preventing it from running off the piece. It also contributes to matte finishes and enhances durability.
- Balance of Components: The interaction between silica, fluxes, and alumina determines the melting point, surface texture, and overall stability of a glaze.

The Role of Fluxes, Silica, and Alumina in Glaze Formation

- Fluxes in Detail: Fluxes vary by type—alkali fluxes like sodium create fluid, glossy finishes, while alkaline earth fluxes like calcium result in stable, matte surfaces. The choice of flux influences the glaze's firing range.
- Silica as the Foundation: Too little silica leads to under-fired, dull surfaces, while too much can make the glaze overly stiff and prone to cracking.
- Alumina's Importance: A glaze with insufficient alumina may drip or run during firing. Conversely, excess alumina can cause a rough, dry texture.
- Achieving Balance: Properly balanced proportions ensure a glaze that is both aesthetically pleasing and structurally sound.

Colorants and Opacifiers: How to Achieve Desired Colors and Effects

- Colorants: Oxides like cobalt, copper, and iron produce vivid colors, with the final hue dependent on firing atmosphere. For example, copper oxide yields green in oxidation but red in reduction.
- Opacifiers: Materials like tin oxide or zirconium dioxide make glazes opaque, enhancing color richness and covering flaws in the clay body.
- Layering Colors: Combining multiple colorants can create complex, layered effects. For example, cobalt and rutile together produce unique blue-green hues.
- Testing Colors: Always test colorants at different concentrations, as slight variations can lead to dramatic changes in the final result.

Understanding Glaze Recipes and How to Alter Them

- Breaking Down Recipes: Glaze recipes are typically written as percentages. For example, 40% feldspar, 30% silica, 20% whiting, and 10% kaolin. These percentages guide the proportions of each ingredient.
 - Modifying Recipes: To make a glaze glossier, increase fluxes slightly. For a matte finish, add alumina or reduce fluxes.
 - Experimenting Safely: Alter one variable at a time and document changes meticulously to track results.
 - Batch Sizes: Scale recipes up or down based on your needs, ensuring consistent ratios of ingredients.
1. Select a Recipe: Choose a glaze recipe. For this example, let's say the recipe calls for:
 - Silica: 30%
 - Feldspar: 40%
 - Whiting: 20%

- Kaolin: 10%
2. Total Batch Size: Determine the total batch size you want to make. Let's say you're aiming for a 1000-gram batch.
3. Calculate Ingredient Weights:
- Silica: 30% of 1000 grams = $0.30 \times 1000 = 300$ grams
 - Feldspar: 40% of 1000 grams = $0.40 \times 1000 = 400$ grams
 - Whiting: 20% of 1000 grams = $0.20 \times 1000 = 200$ grams
 - Kaolin: 10% of 1000 grams = $0.10 \times 1000 = 100$ grams\
4. Weigh Each Ingredient: Measure out each ingredient according to the calculated weights.
- Silica: Weigh out 300 grams
 - Feldspar: Weigh out 400 grams
 - Whiting: Weigh out 200 grams
 - Kaolin: Weigh out 100 grams
5. Mixing: Combine all ingredients in a larger container and mix thoroughly.
6. Adjustments: If needed, adjust the consistency or properties of the glaze by adding more ingredients. For example, if the glaze is too thick, you might add water. If it's too thin, you might add more dry ingredients.
7. Testing: Test the glaze on a sample piece or test tile to observe the results.
8. Storage: Store any leftover glaze in a tightly sealed container labeled with the recipe name and date.

Safety Considerations in Glaze Chemistry

- Handling Materials: Always wear gloves and a mask when working with powdered glaze ingredients to avoid skin irritation or inhalation of fine particles.
- Toxicity Awareness: Some materials, like lead-based fluxes or certain oxides, are hazardous. Ensure all glazes used for functional ware are food-safe.
- Proper Ventilation: Work in a well-ventilated space, especially during mixing and firing, as some materials release fumes at high temperatures.
- Storage: Label all glaze materials clearly and store them in sealed containers away from moisture or heat.

[8.1.1: Glazy.org](#)

[8.1.2: Glaze Logbook](#)

This page titled [8.1: Introduction to Glaze Chemistry](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

8.1.1: Glazy.org

8.1.1: Glazy.org is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by LibreTexts.

8.1.2: Glaze Logbook

This page titled [8.1.2: Glaze Logbook](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

8.2: Glaze Characteristics and Types

Characteristics

Transparent Glazes

- Characteristics: Allow the underlying surface or decoration to show through; available in glossy, satin, or matte finishes.
- Common Uses: Highlight surface textures, carved designs, or underglaze patterns.

Opaque Glazes

- Characteristics: Completely cover the surface, obscuring any texture or decoration beneath.
- Common Uses: Create bold, solid colors or uniform finishes.

Ash Glaze

- Characteristics: Historically made with wood ash, these glazes produce a natural, flowing effect. Modern ash glazes use substitutes to mimic this traditional look.
- Common Uses: Rustic, organic pottery; associated with wood-fired kilns.

Salt Glaze

- Characteristics: Created by introducing salt into the kiln during firing, which reacts with silica in the clay to form a thin, textured glaze.
- Common Uses: Functional pottery with a distinctive, slightly orange-peel surface.

Alkaline Glaze

- Characteristics: High in alkaline fluxes like soda or potash, creating glossy finishes with soft, fluid textures.
- Common Uses: Traditional forms, often paired with natural clay bodies.

Celadon Variants

- Characteristics: Transparent glazes in hues of pale green, blue, or gray; often influenced by slight variations in iron oxide content and firing conditions.
- Common Uses: Highlight fine details on porcelain or white clay.

Copper Red (Sang de Boeuf)

- Characteristics: Intense red or burgundy hues achieved in reduction firings. Copper oxides are key to this glaze type.
- Common Uses: Decorative and high-end ceramic pieces.

Iron Glazes

- Characteristics: Iron oxide-rich glazes produce earthy tones such as brown, amber, or rust. Effects can vary with firing atmosphere and temperature.
- Common Uses: Rustic pottery and functional ware.

Cobalt Blue

- Characteristics: Vibrant, deep blue color achieved with cobalt oxide or carbonate.
- Common Uses: Decorative pieces and traditional ceramics, including Delftware and Chinese porcelain.

Zinc Crystal Glaze

- Characteristics: Encourages large crystals to grow within the glaze during a controlled cooling cycle.
- Common Uses: Decorative work, especially on sculptural ceramics.

Satin Glaze

- Characteristics: Offers a finish between glossy and matte, with a soft sheen.
- Common Uses: Adds subtle elegance to functional or decorative pieces.

Metallic Glazes

- Characteristics: Create shiny, reflective surfaces, often with gold, bronze, or silver tones. Many require post-firing applications like lusters.
- Common Uses: Highlight accents or decorative elements.

Speckled Glaze

- Characteristics: Contains small particles that create specks or flecks on the surface, adding depth and texture.
- Common Uses: Decorative functional ware, emphasizing rustic or natural aesthetics.

Oil Spot Glaze

- Characteristics: Produces spots or patches resembling oil on water. Created by excess iron in the glaze bubbling during firing.
- Common Uses: Traditional East Asian ceramics.

Carbon Trap Glaze

- Characteristics: Traps carbon during reduction firing, creating smoky, dark effects on the surface.
- Common Uses: Wood-fired and Shino-style pottery.

Crawling Glaze

- Characteristics: A glaze defect (often intentional) where the glaze pulls away from the surface, creating bare patches.
- Common Uses: Abstract or experimental ceramics.

Opalescent Glaze

- Characteristics: Iridescent and luminous, with shifting colors depending on light and thickness.
- Common Uses: Decorative and sculptural pieces.

Dry Matte Glaze

- Characteristics: Extremely matte and non-reflective; can have a powdery or textured finish.
- Common Uses: Sculptural ceramics or pieces emphasizing form over function.

Reduction Glazes

- Characteristics: Fired in a reduced oxygen atmosphere, often yielding vibrant, unique colors like copper red or celadon.
- Common Uses: High-fire, gas, or wood-fired ceramics.

Oxidation Glazes

- Characteristics: Fired in a kiln with plenty of oxygen, producing bright, predictable colors.
- Common Uses: Electric kiln firings; functional and decorative ware.

Satin Matte Glaze

- Characteristics: Combines the softness of matte with a subtle sheen, resulting in a silky finish.
- Common Uses: Functional pottery and contemporary designs.

Peacock Glaze

- Characteristics: Creates iridescent patterns and vibrant colors resembling peacock feathers.
- Common Uses: Decorative or high-impact sculptural ceramics.

Glaze Types (some)

Shino Glaze

Shino glazes originated in Japan during the 16th century and are known for their warm, earthy tones and unpredictable surface textures. Typically composed of feldspar, clay, and a small amount of ash, Shino glazes produce a wide range of effects, including orange, red, white, and black hues, depending on the firing conditions and application thickness. They are most often used in reduction firings at high temperatures, where the atmospheric conditions enhance their characteristic color variations. Shino glazes are valued for their rustic aesthetic, often featuring carbon trapping, which creates smoky patterns and enhances the organic appeal of the surface.

Shino glaze is often applied as the first layer in multi-layered glazing because of its unique properties and interactions with the clay body and other glazes. The phrase "Shino first or the worst" reflects the ceramic community's understanding that applying Shino glaze on top of another glaze often leads to undesirable results. Here's why Shino needs to go first:

1. Proper Absorption and Adhesion

- Shino glazes require direct contact with the clay body to adhere properly and develop their characteristic effects, such as carbon trapping and flashing.
- If applied on top of another glaze, Shino can peel, crawl, or fail to stick because it cannot absorb into the clay. The base layer interrupts this essential process, making it critical to follow the mantra: "Shino first or the worst."

2. Enhancing Atmospheric Effects

- Shino is highly responsive to firing atmospheres, especially in reduction, where it produces its signature orange, smoky, or carbon-trapped effects.
- These effects are achieved through direct interaction with the clay body, which cannot occur if Shino is applied over another glaze. A top layer would block the Shino from showcasing its full range of atmospheric beauty.

3. Compatibility with Other Glazes

- Shino's high alumina content and viscosity can create surface tension issues when applied as the top glaze, causing crawling or uneven textures.
- However, when Shino is applied first, subsequent layers of glaze can fuse with it during firing, creating rich, layered effects. Reversing this order often leads to unpredictable and less desirable results, hence the reminder: "Shino first or the worst."

4. Foundation for Layering

- Shino's earthy tones and thick textures make it an excellent foundation for layering other glazes. Applied first, it provides a stable base that can interact with additional layers in unique and appealing ways.
- If applied last, Shino's thickness and tendency to resist flowing during firing often disrupt the underlying glaze, leading to patchy or messy results.

Conclusion

When using Shino glaze, always remember "Shino first or the worst." This approach ensures proper adhesion, maximizes atmospheric effects, and avoids technical issues like crawling or peeling. Shino's beauty lies in its interaction with the clay body and its ability to complement other glazes when applied as the foundational layer.

Nuka Glaze

Nuka, meaning "rice bran" in Japanese, is a glaze traditionally made with wood ash and feldspar, creating a semi-transparent, glossy finish. The ash contributes natural fluxing properties, resulting in a fluid glaze that flows slightly during firing, leaving drips and pooling that add depth and character. Nuka glazes are typically applied over a dark clay body to highlight their milky white or blue-tinged appearance, which is accentuated in reduction firings. Their soft, flowing textures evoke a sense of movement, making them a popular choice for functional pottery and decorative ware alike.

Tenmoku Glaze

Tenmoku glazes, derived from Chinese ceramic traditions, are prized for their deep, glossy black or reddish-brown finishes. Rich in iron oxide, Tenmoku glazes produce a lustrous surface that often reveals subtle color variations, such as streaks of brown, gold, or

red, depending on the firing atmosphere and clay body. They are typically fired at high temperatures in reduction kilns, where the iron oxide reacts to create their characteristic depth and warmth. The glaze often pools in textured areas, creating striking highlights and adding to its timeless appeal.

Celadon Glaze

Celadon is a transparent glaze with a delicate green or blue tint, historically associated with Chinese porcelain. It is achieved by adding small amounts of iron oxide to a glaze and firing it in a reduction atmosphere at high temperatures. The subtle, glassy finish of celadon enhances surface details, making it ideal for carved or textured pieces. Traditionally applied over white or light clay bodies, celadon is celebrated for its serene and elegant aesthetic, often reminiscent of jade.

Chun Glaze

Chun glazes, another legacy of Chinese ceramic tradition, are known for their opalescent, bluish tones and soft, fluid texture. They are typically formulated with high levels of silica and alumina, creating a thick, glossy surface that can exhibit streaks, drips, or pooling effects. Chun glazes are often applied over stoneware or porcelain and fired in reduction kilns, where variations in thickness enhance their unique interplay of blues and whites. The ethereal quality of Chun glazes makes them a popular choice for creating pieces with a luminous, almost otherworldly character.

Clear Glaze

Clear glaze is a transparent coating that enhances the underlying surface, whether it's a bare clay body, slip decoration, or underglaze pattern. Available in glossy, satin, or matte finishes, clear glazes are versatile and can be used in both functional and decorative ceramics. The clarity of the glaze depends on the firing temperature and composition; over-application or improper firing may cause cloudiness or pinholing. A clear glaze is often used to protect and highlight intricate surface details, making it an essential choice for many potters.

Waxy Matte Glaze

Waxy matte glazes are characterized by their smooth, velvety texture and muted, soft appearance. Unlike glossy glazes, they do not reflect light, lending a quiet, understated quality to ceramic surfaces. Achieving a successful waxy matte finish often involves fine-tuning the balance of alumina and silica in the glaze recipe. These glazes are versatile, offering a tactile experience ideal for both functional ware and sculptural pieces, and are particularly effective at emphasizing the natural beauty of earthy tones or pastel colors.

Strontium Glaze

Strontium glazes incorporate strontium carbonate as a flux, which produces unique, vibrant color responses, particularly with certain oxides like copper or cobalt. They are often used in place of calcium carbonate (whiting) to achieve subtle differences in color and surface quality. Strontium glazes can range from glossy to matte finishes and are typically used in mid- to high-fire applications. Their ability to enhance bright, saturated hues makes them a favorite for creating dynamic, eye-catching ceramics.

Tea Dust Glaze

Tea dust glazes are known for their mottled surface, resembling fine specks of gold or green scattered over a dark, glossy base. This effect is achieved through the controlled crystallization of iron oxides during firing, often at high temperatures in reduction kilns. The glaze's depth and richness are heightened by the contrast between the dark background and shimmering specks. Tea dust glazes are frequently used for traditional forms like bowls and teapots, lending a sense of refinement and subtle luxury to functional pottery.

Oribe Glaze

Oribe glazes, named after the Japanese tea master Furuta Oribe, are renowned for their vibrant green hues and playful, asymmetrical patterns. The glaze typically contains copper as a colorant and is applied in thick, painterly layers. Firing in oxidation or reduction can create variations, from bright emerald greens to deeper, olive tones. Oribe glazes are often paired with contrasting white or brown areas on a piece, resulting in bold, dynamic compositions that reflect the aesthetic principles of the Momoyama period.

This page titled [8.2: Glaze Characteristics and Types](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

8.3: Triaxial Glaze Testing

This page titled [8.3: Triaxial Glaze Testing](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

8.4: Formulating Glazes for Specific Effects

Strategies for Creating Matte, Glossy, and Textured Glazes

- **Matte Glazes:** Increase the alumina content or use materials like magnesium carbonate to create a soft, matte surface. Matte finishes are also achieved by underfiring or slowing the cooling cycle in the kiln.
 - **Glossy Glazes:** Add more fluxes, such as feldspar or calcium carbonate, to lower the melting point and increase the glaze's fluidity, resulting in a shiny surface. Transparent glazes often achieve high gloss when applied thinly.
 - **Textured Glazes:** Introduce materials like grog, ash, or silica sand to create rough, textured surfaces. Controlled melting of these additives during firing can create unique, tactile finishes.
 - **Testing:** Test combinations of these adjustments to understand their effects and fine-tune recipes for specific surfaces.
-

Developing Glazes for Low-Fire, Mid-Range, and High-Fire Applications

- **Low-Fire Glazes:** Designed for temperatures between Cone 06–04 (1,820–1,940°F), these glazes often feature bright, vivid colors due to the stability of colorants at lower temperatures.
 - **Mid-Range Glazes:** Fired at Cone 5–6 (2,102–2,192°F), these glazes balance durability and color vibrancy. They are popular for functional ware due to their increased strength.
 - **High-Fire Glazes:** At Cone 9–10 (2,328–2,380°F), high-fire glazes yield earthy tones and subtle finishes, as many colorants volatilize or alter at extreme temperatures.
 - **Recipe Adjustments:** Adjust fluxes and silica levels in glaze recipes to ensure melting occurs at the appropriate temperature for your firing range.
-

Special Effects in Glazing: Crystals, Celadons, Raku

- **Crystalline Glazes:** These glazes rely on high levels of zinc oxide and slow cooling cycles to grow crystals within the glaze. Experiment with extended holds at specific temperatures to encourage crystal formation.
 - **Celadon Glazes:** Thin, transparent glazes with a soft green tint, celadons are typically applied over light-colored clay bodies. Iron oxide is the key colorant for achieving this effect.
 - **Raku Glazes:** Formulated to withstand rapid cooling, raku glazes often include crackling or metallic finishes. The process involves removing pieces from the kiln while hot and cooling them in combustible materials.
 - **Experimentation:** Test these techniques to understand the balance between glaze composition and firing schedules for achieving these effects.
-

Adjusting Glaze Viscosity and Surface Tension for Different Applications

- **Viscosity:** Adjust glaze thickness by adding water or flocculants like Epsom salts to achieve the desired consistency for brushing, dipping, or spraying.
 - **Surface Tension:** To prevent crawling or uneven application, adjust the balance of fluxes and stabilizers. A small amount of bentonite can improve glaze adhesion.
 - **Testing Application Methods:** Different application methods may require varying viscosities. For example, spraying requires thinner glazes, while dipping benefits from medium viscosity.
 - **Troubleshooting:** Observe how the glaze behaves during application and firing, and make incremental adjustments to refine its performance.
-

Eco-Friendly and Food-Safe Glaze Considerations

- **Non-Toxic Materials:** Use non-toxic fluxes, colorants, and opacifiers to ensure your glazes are safe for functional ware. Avoid lead, cadmium, or other hazardous materials.
- **Food Safety Testing:** Test glazes for leaching by sending samples to a certified lab. Glazes for food-safe ware should be stable and non-reactive.
- **Environmentally Friendly Practices:** Reuse excess glaze and responsibly dispose of glaze waste. Avoid washing glazes with toxic materials into drains.

- **Documentation:** Clearly label glazes as food-safe or non-food-safe, and educate yourself about the regulations in your region for functional pottery.

This page titled [8.4: Formulating Glazes for Specific Effects](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

8.5: Making and Using Glaze Test Tiles

Designing Test Tiles That Effectively Display Glaze Characteristics

- **Shape and Size:** Use tiles with a flat area for color and texture tests, as well as vertical sections to observe how the glaze flows.
 - **Consistency:** Create test tiles from the same clay body as your final pieces to ensure accurate results.
 - **Marking:** Label each tile with a reference number, recipe, or glaze name for clear identification after firing.
 - **Adaptability:** Include details like ridges, incised lines, or carved textures to observe how the glaze interacts with different surface features.
-

Systematic Approaches to Applying Glazes on Test Tiles

- **Single Glaze Testing:** Apply a uniform coat of a single glaze to observe its base properties, such as color, opacity, and texture.
 - **Layered Applications:** Test combinations of multiple glazes to observe interactions. For example, apply a base coat of one glaze and a second glaze over part of the tile.
 - **Variable Thickness:** Apply the glaze in gradients, from thin to thick, to study how variations in application affect the result.
 - **Controlled Firing:** Fire all test tiles in the same kiln load to ensure consistent conditions and reliable comparisons.
-

Organizing and Conducting Glaze Firing for Test Tiles

- **Batch Testing:** Group similar tests (e.g., variations of the same glaze) in the same firing for easier analysis.
 - **Kiln Placement:** Place test tiles in different areas of the kiln to study the impact of temperature variation. For example, tiles near the kiln's top may experience higher heat.
 - **Firing Records:** Document the firing schedule, including temperature ramps and holds, to replicate or adjust conditions in future tests.
 - **Post-Firing Notes:** Record observations immediately after unloading the kiln, noting any unexpected effects or anomalies.
-

Analyzing and Interpreting Test Tile Results

- **Surface Quality:** Examine the glaze for smoothness, texture, and flow. Identify areas where the glaze ran, pooled, or cracked.
 - **Color Variations:** Compare color intensity, richness, and evenness across tiles. Note how thickness or overlaps affect the final hue.
 - **Functional Qualities:** Test for durability, adhesion, and food safety (if applicable). For example, a glossy glaze on a mug rim should be smooth and non-porous.
 - **Refinement:** Use the best-performing tests as the basis for further recipe adjustments or as final glaze formulas.
-

Creating a Reference Library of Glaze Test Tiles

- **Organized Storage:** Store test tiles in labeled boxes or on display boards, sorted by firing temperature, clay body, or glaze type.
 - **Comprehensive Notes:** Attach written notes or digital records to each tile, including the recipe, firing conditions, and application method.
 - **Visual Comparisons:** Display tiles in a way that allows quick comparisons, such as grouping them by color or finish.
 - **Ongoing Documentation:** Continuously update your library with new tests to build a robust resource for future projects.
-

This page titled [8.5: Making and Using Glaze Test Tiles](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

8.6: Keeping a Kiln Log

The Benefits of Maintaining a Detailed Kiln Log

- Consistency: A kiln log allows you to replicate successful firings by recording firing schedules, kiln settings, and atmospheric conditions. Over time, these records build a reliable framework for consistent results.
- Troubleshooting: Logs provide valuable insights into firing problems, such as uneven heating or unexpected glaze outcomes. By comparing logs, you can identify patterns and adjust future firings accordingly.
- Efficiency: Documenting firings helps optimize kiln usage, improving fuel or energy efficiency and reducing wasted resources.
- Growth: Tracking your work over time highlights your progress and helps refine your techniques, offering a clear record of your evolving practice.

Essential Information to Include in Your Kiln Log

- Date and Time: Record the start and end times of each firing to track kiln usage and firing duration.
- Firing Schedule: Note ramp rates, temperature holds, and cooling cycles. For example: "Ramp at 150°F/hr to 1,800°F, hold for 20 minutes, then slow cool."
- Kiln Load Details: Describe or sketch the arrangement of pieces in the kiln, noting their positions relative to heat sources or thermocouples.
- Materials Used: List the clay bodies, glazes, and test tiles included in the firing to correlate results with specific materials.

Using Kiln Logs to Improve Firing Consistency and Troubleshoot Problems

- Uneven Results: If pieces at different levels of the kiln fire inconsistently, refer to your logs to analyze placement patterns and adjust future loads for better distribution.
- Glaze Anomalies: Track glaze behavior across firings to identify variables affecting texture, color, or flow. For instance, a change in cooling time may alter a glaze's appearance.
- Kiln Performance: Logs help detect issues like thermocouple drift, uneven heating, or underperforming elements by comparing expected results to actual outcomes.
- Repeat Success: Review logs from successful firings to replicate conditions, ensuring that similar loads produce consistent results.

Digital vs. Traditional Kiln Logs: Pros and Cons

- Digital Logs: Digital platforms like spreadsheets or apps offer searchable, easily organized records. You can include photos, charts, and automated calculations for added convenience. However, they require a device and backup systems to avoid data loss.
- Traditional Logs: Handwritten logs are simple, accessible, and do not depend on technology. They allow for quick note-taking directly in the studio but can become bulky or harder to organize over time.
- Hybrid Approach: Combining both methods—writing notes by hand during firing and transferring them to a digital database later—offers the best of both worlds.
- Personal Preference: Choose the method that integrates best with your workflow and studio setup, ensuring you maintain the habit consistently.

Case Studies on the Value of Kiln Logs in Professional Practice

- Improving Results: A ceramic artist noticed inconsistent celadon glaze results. By analyzing their logs, they identified that uneven cooling cycles were the issue. Adjusting the cooling schedule led to consistently vibrant celadon finishes.
- Troubleshooting Failures: A studio faced recurring cracking in large bowls. Kiln logs revealed that rapid temperature ramps were causing stress. Slower ramp rates resolved the issue, improving both success rates and customer satisfaction.
- Developing New Techniques: A potter experimenting with crystalline glazes used logs to track the precise hold times and temperatures needed for crystal growth. Their detailed records became a guide for replicating the effect across multiple firings.

- Teaching Tool: In an educational setting, kiln logs serve as a valuable resource for students, providing real-world examples of firing schedules and their outcomes.

This page titled [8.6: Keeping a Kiln Log](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

8.7: Troubleshooting

Introduction to Glaze Chemistry

1. Glaze Not Melting Properly:

- Cause: Insufficient flux content or incorrect firing temperature.
- Solution: Adjust the ratio of flux to silica and alumina in the glaze recipe. Confirm the kiln is reaching the intended temperature.
- Tip: Test adjustments in small batches and document changes for future reference.
- Prevention: Use a pyrometer or witness cones to verify accurate kiln performance.

2. Crazeing or Shivering:

- Cause: Thermal expansion mismatch between the glaze and clay body.
- Solution: Modify the glaze recipe to better match the clay body's coefficient of expansion. For crazing, reduce silica. For shivering, increase it.
- Tip: Test glazes on multiple clay bodies to identify compatibility issues.
- Prevention: Use test tiles to evaluate fit before applying glazes to finished pieces.

Triaxial Glaze Testing

1. Difficult to Interpret Results:

- Cause: Inconsistent labeling or recording during the testing process.
- Solution: Clearly label all test tiles and keep detailed notes for each variable being tested. Photograph results for visual reference.
- Tip: Use a triaxial chart to map your test samples and correlate findings with specific recipes.
- Prevention: Develop a standardized system for testing and documentation.

2. Tests Not Reproducible:

- Cause: Variability in ingredient measurement or firing conditions.
- Solution: Weigh ingredients precisely and use calibrated equipment for firing. Ensure consistent application thicknesses.
- Tip: Fire all test tiles in the same load to eliminate temperature inconsistencies.
- Prevention: Double-check measurements and firing schedules before starting tests.

Formulating Glazes for Specific Effects

1. Unintended Colors:

- Cause: Unexpected interactions between colorants or changes in firing atmosphere.
- Solution: Test colorants in isolation before combining them. For reduction effects, ensure sufficient oxygen reduction during firing.
- Tip: Experiment with small test batches to explore new combinations.
- Prevention: Study how specific oxides behave under different conditions to anticipate outcomes.

2. Crystals Not Forming:

- Cause: Cooling cycle too rapid or glaze composition lacks sufficient zinc oxide.
- Solution: Slow down the cooling process and increase zinc oxide content in the glaze recipe.
- Tip: Hold the kiln at the ideal temperature for crystal growth (e.g., 1,850°F) to encourage formation.
- Prevention: Use a programmable kiln for precise temperature control.

Making and Using Glaze Test Tiles

1. Glaze Looks Different on Test Tiles vs. Pieces:

- Cause: Test tiles may differ in texture, shape, or clay body from the final work.
- Solution: Use test tiles made from the same clay and fired under identical conditions as your pieces.
- Tip: Design test tiles that mimic the surfaces of your final pieces, such as flat and curved areas.
- Prevention: Test glazes on both tiles and sample pieces to ensure consistency.

2. Running Glazes:

- Cause: Excessive flux content or over-application.
- Solution: Reduce the flux in the glaze recipe or apply thinner coats. Incline test tiles slightly to mimic how glaze flows on vertical surfaces.
- Tip: Test glazes on inclined tiles to gauge their movement during firing.
- Prevention: Observe glaze behavior on test tiles before using it on finished pieces.

This page titled [8.7: Troubleshooting](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

9: The Firing Process

The firing process is the culmination of all ceramic work, transforming fragile, unfired clay into durable, finished pieces. This chapter explores the stages of firing, the variety of kiln types and atmospheres, and the techniques that bring ceramics to life. From foundational bisque firings to the nuanced effects of glaze and alternative firings, understanding the science and artistry of firing is key to mastering ceramics. Through practical advice and troubleshooting tips, this chapter equips artists with the knowledge to navigate the complexities of firing and achieve consistent results.

This page titled [9: The Firing Process](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

9.1: Overview of Kiln Firing

Understanding the Stages of Firing: Dehydration, Quartz Inversion, and Vitrification

- Dehydration: At around 660°F (350°C), chemically bound water in the clay evaporates, marking the transition from raw clay to ceramic material. This is a crucial step that must proceed slowly to avoid cracking.
- Quartz Inversion: Occurring at 1,063°F (573°C), quartz crystals in the clay expand and rearrange, causing a temporary increase in volume. Careful ramp rates are essential during this stage to prevent thermal shock.
- Vitrification: At high temperatures, fluxes in the clay melt and bond particles together, creating a dense, durable ceramic body. The degree of vitrification depends on the clay body and firing temperature.
- Understanding Transformation: Each stage is interdependent, and managing these transitions ensures the integrity of the final piece.

Types of Kilns: Electric, Gas, Wood, and Alternative Fuels

- Electric Kilns: Clean, user-friendly, and ideal for consistent oxidation firings, electric kilns are commonly used for functional and decorative ware. They are highly controllable and efficient for small studios.
- Gas Kilns: Offering the ability to create reduction atmospheres, gas kilns allow for more dynamic surface effects, making them popular for high-fire stoneware and porcelain.
- Wood Kilns: Valued for their organic, unpredictable results, wood kilns require intense labor and skill. Ash deposits during firing create unique textures and surfaces.
- Alternative Fuels: Experimental artists may use oil, propane, or even sawdust in pit or raku firings for creative and unpredictable results. Each fuel source impacts the final surface finish uniquely.

The Significance of Firing Schedules and Heatwork

- Ramp Rates: Slow, steady increases in temperature ensure even heating and minimize stress on pieces. Abrupt temperature changes can cause cracking or warping.
- Soak Periods: Holding the kiln at a specific temperature allows glazes to mature and ensures thorough vitrification of the clay body.
- Cooling Cycles: Controlled cooling can enhance certain glaze effects, such as crystalline formations or subtle color shifts. Rapid cooling risks thermal shock.
- Heatwork: Beyond peak temperature, total heat energy (time and temperature combined) affects clay and glaze maturation. Witness cones are critical for monitoring this.

Kiln Atmospheres: Oxidation, Reduction, and Neutral

- Oxidation Atmosphere: Common in electric kilns, oxidation maintains an oxygen-rich environment, resulting in bright, consistent glaze colors.
- Reduction Atmosphere: Achieved in gas or wood kilns, reduction limits oxygen, encouraging unique surface effects like celadons or copper reds.
- Neutral Atmosphere: Found in some gas or soda kilns, neutral firings balance oxygen and reduction to produce subtle variations in surface quality.
- Atmosphere Selection: The choice of atmosphere depends on the desired finish and the chemical reactions required for specific glazes.

Safety Practices and Environmental Considerations in Firing

- Ventilation: Proper kiln ventilation prevents exposure to harmful fumes, such as those from burning glazes or fuel. Install an exhaust system or fire outdoors for safety.

- Protective Gear: Wear heat-resistant gloves and avoid direct contact with kiln surfaces during operation. Eye protection is essential when peeking into the kiln.
- Energy Efficiency: Optimize kiln loads and firing schedules to reduce energy consumption.
- Environmental Impacts: Consider the sustainability of fuel sources and responsible disposal of kiln waste.

This page titled [9.1: Overview of Kiln Firing](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

9.2: Bisque Firing- Purpose and Process

The Role of Bisque Firing in the Ceramic Process

- Primary Purpose: Bisque firing transforms greenware into porous yet stable ceramic ware, making it easier to handle and glaze.
- Degassing: It eliminates organic materials and impurities from the clay body, ensuring a cleaner glaze application.
- Strengthening: Bisque-fired pieces are less fragile than greenware, reducing the risk of damage during glazing.
- Foundation for Glazing: The porous surface allows glazes to adhere effectively, making it a critical step in ceramic production.

Preparing Wares for Bisque Firing: Drying, Wadding, and Stacking

- Thorough Drying: Ensure pieces are completely dry to avoid steam explosions during firing. Preheating the kiln can help eliminate residual moisture.
- Wadding: In some cases, wads of clay are placed under pieces to prevent sticking to the kiln shelf.
- Stacking Strategies: Bisque pieces can be stacked tightly since they will not fuse during this firing stage, maximizing kiln efficiency.
- Inspection: Check for cracks, sharp edges, or inconsistencies before loading the kiln to ensure high-quality results.

Optimizing Bisque Firing Schedules for Different Clay Bodies

- Low-Fire Clay: Bisque firing typically reaches Cone 04–06 (1,820–1,940°F) for earthenware.
- Mid-Range and High-Fire Clay: Stoneware and porcelain are usually bisque fired at Cone 08–06 (1,730–1,830°F), depending on their specific requirements.
- Slow Ramps: Gradual temperature increases are vital for thicker or more complex pieces to avoid cracking.
- Hold Periods: A soak at the top temperature ensures complete burnout of organic material.

Assessing Bisque Ware: Identifying Issues Before Glaze Firing

- Cracking or Warping: Check for structural flaws caused by uneven drying or rapid temperature increases.
- Porosity: Ensure the bisque ware is porous enough for effective glaze application.
- Residual Carbon: Look for black spots or odors, indicating incomplete burnout of organic material.
- Surface Quality: Smooth out rough edges or surface imperfections before glazing.

Re-Bisque Firing: When and Why It Might Be Necessary

- Underglazed Pieces: Re-bisque firing can stabilize underglaze decorations before applying a glaze coat.
- Correcting Issues: If the original bisque firing was incomplete, a re-bisque ensures proper burnout of impurities.
- Low-Quality Bisque: Re-bisque firing can strengthen ware that feels overly fragile or brittle.
- Caution: Avoid multiple bisque firings on the same piece, as repeated heat exposure can weaken the clay body.

This page titled [9.2: Bisque Firing- Purpose and Process](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

SECTION OVERVIEW

9.3: Glaze Firing- Understanding Temperatures and Atmospheres

Glaze firing, including the maturation of glazes and the impact of different kiln atmospheres on results, is covered in this subchapter. Techniques for layering glazes and strategic kiln loading, along with the significance of cooling cycles, are discussed to guide artists in achieving desired glaze effects.

Pyrometric cones are small, cone-shaped devices made of ceramic materials designed to bend or melt at specific temperatures during a kiln firing. They are used to measure the *heat work* (a combination of temperature and time) experienced by ceramics in a kiln, providing a reliable indication of whether the desired firing conditions have been achieved.

Each cone is calibrated to deform at a precise temperature range, which depends on the firing rate. They come in a series, typically numbered from **022 to 42**, with lower numbers corresponding to lower firing temperatures.

The Orton Firing Chart for Ceramics

The **Orton Firing Chart** is a reference tool provided by the Edward Orton Jr. Ceramic Foundation to help ceramists understand how pyrometric cones behave under different firing conditions. It includes:

1. **Cone Numbers:** Indicates specific cones and their bending points.
2. **Temperature Ranges:** Lists the temperature at which each cone bends under standard heating rates.
3. **Heating Rate (°C/°F per hour):** Shows how the temperature at which the cone bends changes based on the speed of the firing process (e.g., slow, medium, fast).
4. **Deformation States:** Illustrates the stages of cone deformation (e.g., standing upright, starting to bend, fully bent) to indicate when a particular cone has achieved its heat work.

Importance of Pyrometric Cones and Firing Charts

1. **Accurate Measurement of Heat Work:**
 - Kiln thermometers measure air temperature, but pyrometric cones account for both time and temperature, ensuring accurate control over the firing process.
2. **Firing Consistency:**
 - Using cones ensures repeatable results in ceramic projects, critical for achieving desired glaze effects or clay body vitrification.
3. **Kiln Calibration:**
 - Pyrometric cones help monitor if the kiln's temperature gauge is accurate, as they directly measure the effects of heat work on the materials.
4. **Glaze and Clay Performance:**
 - Different glazes and clays require specific firing conditions. Pyrometric cones ensure that the desired conditions are met.
5. **Identifying Issues:**
 - Cones can reveal uneven heat distribution in the kiln or firing errors, such as underfiring or overfiring.

Practical Use of Pyrometric Cones

1. **Placement:**
 - Place cones in various locations in the kiln (e.g., top, middle, bottom) to monitor temperature uniformity.
2. **Cone Packs:**
 - A typical cone pack includes a lower cone (to indicate nearing temperature), a target cone (the desired firing condition), and a higher cone (to warn of overfiring).
3. **Firing Charts:**

- Refer to the Orton Firing Chart to choose the correct cones for the type of firing (e.g., bisque, glaze) and ensure the kiln is ramped at the appropriate rate.

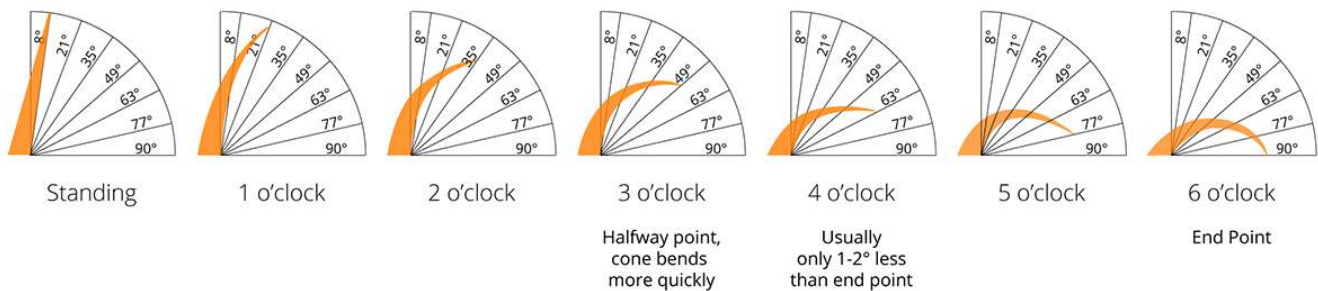
Using pyrometric cones and the Orton Firing Chart ensures high-quality, consistent results in ceramic work while protecting the kiln and the ware from firing mishaps.

TEMPERATURE EQUIVALENTS

CONE	°F	°C	COLOR	FIRE	CLAY REACTION	GLAZES
10	2345	1285	white		stoneware & porcelain clays	high-fire glazes
9	2300	1260			porcelain clays	salt glazes
8	2280	1249				
7	2262	1239				
6	2232	1222			mid-range stoneware & porcelain clays	mid-range glazes
5	2167	1186				
4	2124	1162				
3	2106	1152				
2	2088	1142				
1	2079	1137	yellow			
01	2046	1119				
02	2016	1102				
03	1987	1086				
04	1945	1063			low-fire red & white clays	low-fire glazes
05	1888	1031				
06	1828	998				
07	1789	976				
08	1728	942				
09	1688	920	orange			
010	1657	903			sintering occurs	
011	1607	875				
012	1582	861	cherry red			
013	1539	837				
014	1485	807				
015	1456	791			organic matter burns out	
016	1422	772				
017	1360	738	dull red			
018	1319	715				overglazes/china paints
019	1252	678				
020	1200	649				enamels
021	1159	626				
022	1112	600			dehydration begins	
023	1087	586				

Temperatures listed above are accurate only when the kiln is fired at 100°F/hr during the last 200°F of the firing.
 *Glass Techniques: Slumping, Fusing and Fading. For more specific information on these techniques, visit www.albert.com

Orton Cone Positions



The Chemistry and Physics of Glaze Maturation

- **Melting Point:** During glaze firing, the components of the glaze (fluxes, silica, and alumina) melt and fuse to create a glassy surface. The exact melting point depends on the glaze recipe and firing temperature.
- **Oxide Interactions:** Fluxes lower the melting point of silica, while alumina adds viscosity and stability to the molten glaze, preventing it from running off the surface.
- **Crystallization:** In some glazes, slow cooling encourages the formation of crystals, adding texture or sparkle to the surface.
- **Durability:** Proper glaze maturation ensures a durable, food-safe finish that resists crazing or shivering.

Tailoring Glaze Firing Cycles for Specific Glaze Effects

- **Slow Ramp Rates:** Gradual heating allows the glaze to mature evenly, minimizing defects like pinholes or bubbles.
- **Soak Periods:** Holding the kiln at the peak temperature allows glazes to fully fuse and achieve their intended surface qualities.
- **Rapid Cooling:** Some glazes, like raku, require fast cooling for crackle effects, while others benefit from slow cooling to enhance colors and textures.

- Customization: Adjust firing cycles for specific glaze recipes to achieve consistent results and unique effects.

Strategies for Layering Glazes and Placing Work in the Kiln

- Layering Techniques: Apply multiple glazes to achieve complex color combinations, textures, or depth. Test interactions between glazes to avoid undesirable results.
- Strategic Placement: Position heavily glazed pieces on kiln shelves with catch plates to prevent dripping onto other work or shelves.
- Avoiding Overlap: Keep pieces with reactive glazes separated to prevent cross-contamination during firing.
- Experimentation: Test glaze layering on small tiles before applying to large pieces to understand how the layers interact.

The Impact of Firing Atmospheres on Glaze Outcomes

- Oxidation Atmosphere: Produces bright, predictable colors, especially in clear and transparent glazes. Glazes with cobalt or copper oxides yield vibrant blues and greens.
- Reduction Atmosphere: Encourages earthy, subtle tones and unique effects like celadons, copper reds, or carbon trapping.
- Neutral Atmosphere: Balances the two, creating stable glazes with nuanced variations.
- Atmosphere Selection: Match the firing atmosphere to the glaze's requirements for consistent, desired results.

Cooling Cycles and Their Effects on Crystalline Glazes and Microcrystalline Surfaces

- Crystalline Glazes: Require slow cooling or programmed holds at specific temperatures (e.g., 1,850°F/1,010°C) to allow crystals to grow.
- Microcrystalline Surfaces: Develop subtle textures and patterns during slow cooling cycles, often enhanced by titanium or zinc oxides.
- Rapid Cooling Effects: Sudden cooling can freeze a glaze's molten surface, locking in textures or creating crackle patterns.
- Balancing Cooling Rates: Test various cooling schedules to find the best balance between functionality and aesthetic appeal.

9.3.1: Reduction

This page titled [9.3: Glaze Firing- Understanding Temperatures and Atmospheres](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

9.3.1: Reduction

Val Cushing was a renowned American ceramic artist and educator, known for his contributions to ceramic techniques and glaze formulations. While Cushing explored various firing methods throughout his career, his approach to reduction firing is particularly noted for its ability to achieve rich, vibrant glaze results characteristic of reduced oxygen atmospheres.

Reduction firing is a technique used in ceramic kilns to create a specific atmospheric condition where the kiln atmosphere is made rich in fuel but poor in oxygen (reduction atmosphere) during certain stages of the firing. This atmosphere affects the colors, textures, and finishes of glazes and clay bodies.\

Here is a summary of a typical reduction firing technique inspired by practices similar to those Val Cushing might have used, described in both Fahrenheit and Celsius:

1. Bisque Firing: Before reduction firing, ware is bisque fired to prepare it for glazing. This is typically done in an oxidation atmosphere to around 1832°F (1000°C).
2. Glazing and Loading: After bisque firing and applying glazes, the ceramic pieces are loaded into a kiln. Care is taken to ensure good air circulation around each piece.
3. Ramp to Bisque Temperature: The kiln is slowly heated to the bisque temperature again, around 1832°F (1000°C), to ensure the glaze properly adheres to the surface.
4. Reduction Phase Initiation: Reduction is typically started at a temperature around 1652°F to 1724°F (900°C to 940°C) and is maintained or adjusted based on the specific glazes used and desired effects. The reduction atmosphere is achieved by adjusting the kiln's fuel-to-oxygen ratio, making the kiln atmosphere rich in carbon.
5. Soak at High Temperature: The kiln temperature is increased to the target high temperature, often around 2345°F (1285°C) for cone 10 firings, which is a common target for stoneware and porcelain. During this phase, the kiln is soaked (held at a constant temperature) to allow the glazes to mature fully.
6. Oxidation Phase: Near the end of the firing, the kiln atmosphere may be brought back to oxidation for a short period to help clear any residual carbon from the glazes and clay body. This might be around 200°F to 300°F (about 93°C to 149°C) below the peak temperature.
7. Cooling: The kiln is allowed to cool naturally. Rapid cooling can be employed for certain effects but requires careful control to avoid thermal shock.
8. Unloading: Once the kiln has cooled to room temperature, the ware is unloaded, and the results are evaluated.

Val Cushing's specific firing schedules, glaze recipes, and techniques might vary based on the desired outcomes, the kiln type, and the glazes used. However, the essence of reduction firing revolves around controlling the atmosphere within the kiln to influence the final appearance of the ceramic pieces. Always refer to specific glaze recipes and firing schedules for best results, as these can vary widely.

This page titled [9.3.1: Reduction](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

9.4: Special Firing Techniques- Pit, Salt, and Wood Firing

Historical Context and Contemporary Applications of Pit Firing

- Historical Use: Pit firing is one of the oldest firing methods, used by ancient cultures to create functional and decorative pottery.
- Simple Setup: Pieces are buried in combustible materials (sawdust, wood, straw) within a pit, ignited, and allowed to smolder for hours.
- Contemporary Revival: Modern artists use pit firing for its organic, unpredictable surface effects, often enhanced with added salts or oxides.
- Limitations: Pit firing is best suited for decorative pieces, as it lacks the durability and vitrification of modern kiln firing.

Salt and Soda Firing Techniques for Surface Texture and Flash Effects

- Salt Firing: Salt is introduced into the kiln at high temperatures, reacting with the clay to form a distinctive orange-peel texture.
- Soda Firing: Soda ash (sodium carbonate) is used as a safer alternative, creating similar effects with less environmental risk.
- Flashing: Vapors from the salt or soda interact with the clay, creating unique color variations and surface effects.
- Precautions: Protect kiln shelves and furniture with a thick layer of kiln wash, as the vapors can corrode unprotected surfaces.

The Art and Science of Wood Firing: Kiln Designs and Firing Strategies

- Traditional Process: Wood firing relies on a constant supply of wood fuel, requiring skilled management of airflow and temperature.
- Kiln Designs: Common designs include anagama and noborigama kilns, which create long, even heat paths for large batches of pottery.
- Ash Effects: Ash from the wood settles on pieces, melting into the surface to create natural glazes and textures.
- Collaborative Effort: Wood firings often involve teams of artists working together, making it a community-driven process.

Safety and Environmental Impacts of Alternative Firing Techniques

- Fume Management: Salt and wood firings release gases that can be harmful if not properly vented. Outdoor firing with appropriate safety measures is essential.
- Fire Hazards: Pit and wood firings require strict precautions to prevent accidental fires. Always have fire suppression tools on hand.
- Sustainability: Use renewable or recycled materials, such as fallen wood or reclaimed soda ash, to minimize environmental impact.
- Regulations: Check local laws and guidelines for conducting outdoor or alternative firings.

Collaborative and Community Aspects of Special Firing Techniques

- Learning Together: Alternative firings often bring artists together to share knowledge and techniques, fostering a sense of community.
- Shared Resources: Large kilns, such as anagamas, are typically operated by groups due to their labor-intensive firing process.
- Group Exhibitions: Pieces from collaborative firings often reflect the shared effort and diversity of approaches within a firing group.
- Educational Value: These methods provide opportunities for workshops and demonstrations, passing down traditional techniques to new generations.

This page titled [9.4: Special Firing Techniques- Pit, Salt, and Wood Firing](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

9.5: Types of Kilns and Locations

Types of Kilns

Updraft Kilns

An updraft kiln is designed so that the heat source enters at the base of the kiln and exits through a flue at the top. The airflow travels upward, creating a convection effect. These kilns are easier to build and operate, making them a popular choice for smaller wood or gas kilns. However, they often experience uneven heating, with cooler temperatures at the top due to the lack of consistent heat circulation. Updraft kilns are ideal for achieving reduction effects, but careful loading and firing management are necessary to ensure even results.

Downdraft Kilns

A downdraft kiln directs heat upward from the burners or firebox at the base, but the heat is pulled downward by a flue positioned at the bottom. This design allows for better heat circulation and more even temperature distribution throughout the kiln. Downdraft kilns are commonly used for gas or wood firings and are favored by professionals for their ability to produce consistent glaze and clay body results. Though more complex to build and operate, they are versatile and allow for precise atmospheric control.

Cross-Draft Kilns

A cross-draft kiln combines elements of updraft and downdraft kilns. Heat enters from a firebox on one side, travels horizontally across the kiln chamber, and exits through a flue located at the opposite side. This design allows for distinctive flame patterns and surface effects, especially in wood firings, as the flames and ash travel across the pieces. Cross-draft kilns require careful loading and firing techniques, as temperature gradients can occur, but they offer unique aesthetic possibilities for ceramic surfaces.

Anagama Kiln

The anagama kiln is a traditional Japanese wood kiln with a long, tunnel-like chamber and a single firebox at one end. It relies on natural airflow and continuous stoking of wood to maintain high temperatures. The length of the chamber allows for varied effects, with pieces near the firebox exposed to heavy ash deposits and pieces farther away showing subtler results. Firing an anagama kiln can take several days and requires a team of skilled participants.

Noborigama Kiln

A noborigama kiln is a multi-chambered climbing kiln, often built on a slope to use gravity and airflow to its advantage. Each chamber is stoked independently, allowing for different atmospheres and effects within a single firing. This design provides greater control over temperature and surface effects and is ideal for large-scale or collaborative projects. Noborigama kilns are labor-intensive but offer diverse results across chambers.

Train Kiln

The train kiln is a more modern wood kiln design with a long, horizontal chamber and a firebox at one end. Its design facilitates efficient wood usage and consistent heat distribution along its length. Train kilns are popular for their relatively manageable firing process compared to traditional designs, while still producing the ash and flame effects associated with wood firing.

Catenary Arch Kiln

The catenary arch kiln features a self-supporting arch structure that efficiently retains heat. Often used for wood firings, this design minimizes heat loss and reduces the need for additional bracing. The arch shape allows for an even distribution of ash and flame, creating dynamic surfaces on ceramic pieces. These kilns are smaller and more efficient than anagama or noborigama designs but still require skilled operation.

Scale of Kiln Sizes

Small Kilns

- Capacity: Less than 1 cubic foot to around 6 cubic feet.
- Use: Ideal for beginners, hobbyists, or small studios, small kilns are often electric and used for low-fire or mid-range firings.

- Benefits: They are portable, affordable, and energy-efficient, making them suitable for small batches of work.

Medium Kilns

- Capacity: 6 to 20 cubic feet.
- Use: Popular for small production studios, medium kilns can accommodate a variety of functional ware and small sculptures.
- Benefits: Available in electric, gas, or wood designs, medium kilns balance capacity and manageability for individual or small team use.

Large Kilns

- Capacity: 20 cubic feet and above.
- Use: Designed for large-scale production or collaborative projects, large kilns are often used in schools, studios, or professional environments.
- Benefits: These kilns handle significant volumes of work and allow for more experimental or community-focused firings, but they require substantial space, fuel, and maintenance.

Each kiln type and size offers unique advantages, and selecting the right kiln depends on the artist's firing goals, available space, and level of expertise.

Find a Kiln near you

Kiln share

Starting from a simple belief that not every potter needs to own a kiln, Kiln Share is on a mission to make kiln hire more accessible for potters all over the world!

Our goal is to ...

- **Help connect potters looking to [rent kiln space](#) to fire their work, with someone locally who owns a kiln**
- **Helping kiln owners [earn extra income](#) from renting out space in their kiln to local potters**

Kiln Share is 100% FREE for both potters searching for kiln space to hire and for kiln owners who want to be listed in the directory. Kilns can be listed any where in the world!

<https://www.kilnshare.com/>

This page titled [9.5: Types of Kilns and Locations](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

9.6: Troubleshooting

Overview of Kiln Firing

1. Uneven Temperatures Within Kiln: Use witness cones throughout the kiln to monitor temperature variances and adjust loading strategies.
2. Overfiring: Regularly calibrate kiln thermocouples and timers to ensure accurate firing schedules.

Bisque Firing: Purpose and Process

1. Cracking During Bisque Firing: Ensure pieces are completely dry before loading them into the kiln. Preheat the kiln slowly if necessary.
2. Pieces Sticking to Kiln Shelf: Use kiln wash on shelves and avoid placing pieces directly on the shelf where possible.

Glaze Firing: Understanding Temperatures and Atmospheres

1. Glaze Not Maturing: Verify the match between the glaze maturity range and the kiln's firing temperature.
2. Discoloration: Adjust the firing atmosphere (oxidation or reduction) based on the glaze's requirements for color development.

Special Firing Techniques: Pit, Salt, and Wood Firing

1. Unpredictable Results: Embrace the variability inherent in these methods. Experiment with placement and materials to influence outcomes.
2. Safety Concerns: Follow all safety protocols, especially for salt and wood firings, to manage fumes and fire risk.

Uneven Temperatures Within the Kiln

- Problem: Inconsistent heating can result in uneven glaze maturation, warping, or color differences across pieces.
- Solution: Use witness cones at various levels and locations within the kiln to identify hot and cold spots. Adjust the kiln load by spacing pieces evenly and avoiding overloading shelves.
- Tip: Experiment with baffle plates or kiln furniture arrangements to redirect airflow and improve heat distribution.
- Prevention: Regularly check and maintain kiln elements or burners to ensure they are functioning optimally.

Over-firing

- Problem: Over-firing can cause glazes to run excessively, clay bodies to warp, or pieces to fuse to shelves.
- Solution: Calibrate thermocouples regularly to ensure accurate temperature readings. Use pyrometric cones to monitor actual heatwork.
- Tip: Fire test pieces with new glaze recipes to verify their maturation range before applying them to finished work.
- Prevention: Double-check your firing schedule and ensure you don't exceed the recommended temperature for your materials.

Cracking During Bisque Firing

- Problem: Rapid heating or residual moisture in greenware can cause cracks during bisque firing.
- Solution: Allow pieces to dry completely before loading the kiln. Use a slow preheating cycle to drive out remaining moisture.
- Tip: For thick or complex pieces, preheat the kiln at a low temperature (200–250°F/90–120°C) for several hours.
- Prevention: Monitor the drying environment to ensure even drying, avoiding drafts or overly humid conditions.

Pieces Sticking to the Kiln Shelf

- Problem: Glaze drips or improper use of kiln wash can cause pieces to stick to shelves during firing.
- Solution: Apply a fresh, even layer of kiln wash to shelves before firing. Use stilts for glazed bottoms or place catch plates under heavily glazed pieces.

- Tip: Sand down and reapply kiln wash to damaged areas before the next firing to maintain a smooth surface.
- Prevention: Avoid applying glaze too close to the bottom edge of pieces, and ensure shelves are clean before loading.

Glaze Not Maturing

- Problem: Glazes appear dull, rough, or under-fired if they don't reach their target temperature.
- Solution: Verify the glaze's firing range and adjust the kiln schedule as needed. Ensure that thermocouples are accurate and pyrometric cones are used.
- Tip: Fire test tiles with different ramp rates and holds to fine-tune the firing cycle for specific glazes.
- Prevention: Regularly inspect kiln components, especially in gas or wood kilns, where temperature fluctuations are more common.

Discoloration

- Problem: Unexpected colors in glazes can result from improper firing atmospheres, contamination, or material inconsistencies.
- Solution: Ensure the firing atmosphere matches the glaze recipe's requirements (oxidation or reduction). Clean tools and equipment to avoid cross-contamination.
- Tip: Test raw materials in small batches to identify any inconsistencies in purchased supplies.
- Prevention: Store materials in labeled, sealed containers to prevent accidental mixing.

Unpredictable Results in Alternative Firings

- Problem: Pit, salt, and wood firings often produce inconsistent or undesired results due to their dynamic nature.
- Solution: Document firing conditions thoroughly, including placement, materials, and timing, to identify patterns and refine techniques.
- Tip: Experiment with different materials, such as oxides or organic inclusions, to achieve desired effects.
- Prevention: Embrace unpredictability as part of the process and plan for some pieces to serve as learning experiences.

Safety Concerns in Alternative Firings

- Problem: Open flames, toxic fumes, or uncontrolled firing conditions can pose risks in pit, salt, or wood firings.
- Solution: Conduct firings outdoors in well-ventilated areas, and have fire extinguishers or water sources on hand. Wear appropriate protective gear, including gloves, goggles, and masks.
- Tip: Inform neighbors or local authorities if firing in residential areas to avoid conflicts or misunderstandings.
- Prevention: Follow established safety protocols and work with experienced artists to ensure proper handling of firing techniques.

The firing process is a blend of science, art, and careful planning, transforming raw materials into finished ceramics. By understanding kiln types, firing atmospheres, and the stages of firing, artists can refine their work and achieve consistent, high-quality results. Troubleshooting common issues ensures a smoother firing process, while alternative methods like pit, salt, and wood firing provide opportunities for creative exploration. With proper preparation, documentation, and safety practices, the magic of firing becomes a reliable and rewarding part of the ceramic journey.

This page titled [9.6: Troubleshooting](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

10: Design and Aesthetics

10.1: Principles of Ceramic Design

10.2: Color in Ceramics- Glazes and Stains

10.3: Texture and Pattern in Design

10.4: The Critique Process- Evaluating Your Work

10.5: Signing Your Work

10.6: Life-Long Learning

10.6.1: Physical Health

10.6.2: Cognitive Skills

10.7: Troubleshooting

This page titled [10: Design and Aesthetics](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

10.1: Principles of Ceramic Design

Art principles and elements are fundamental concepts used to analyze, interpret, and create works of art across various mediums, including ceramics and sculpture. These principles and elements provide a framework for understanding the visual components of art and design. Here's a breakdown of each:

Art Elements:

1. **Line:** The path of a moving point through space. In ceramics and sculpture, lines can be evident in the contours, edges, and outlines of forms.
2. **Shape:** A two-dimensional area defined by boundaries such as lines or color changes. In sculpture, shapes can be geometric or organic, and in ceramics, they are often seen in the forms of vessels or objects.
3. **Form:** A three-dimensional object with height, width, and depth. Ceramics and sculpture inherently involve the manipulation of form, whether through modeling, carving, or molding.
4. **Color:** The visual sensation produced by the spectrum of light when it interacts with the human eye. Color is utilized in ceramics through glazes, slips, and surface treatments to enhance the aesthetic appeal of a piece.
5. **Texture:** The tactile quality of a surface, which can be perceived through touch or visually implied. Ceramics and sculpture often explore texture through surface treatments, such as carving, incising, or adding relief.
6. **Value:** The degree of lightness or darkness within an artwork. Value is crucial in ceramics and sculpture for creating depth and defining the form through shading and highlighting.
7. **Space:** The area around, within, or between components of an artwork. In sculpture, space can be manipulated by altering the arrangement of forms, while in ceramics, it's considered in terms of the vessel's interior and exterior volumes.

Art Principles:

1. **Balance:** The distribution of visual weight within an artwork. In ceramics and sculpture, balance can be achieved through symmetrical or asymmetrical arrangements of forms and visual elements.
2. **Contrast:** The juxtaposition of different elements to create visual interest and emphasis. In ceramics and sculpture, contrast can be achieved through variations in texture, color, form, or scale.
3. **Emphasis:** The focal point or center of interest in an artwork. In ceramics and sculpture, emphasis can be created through the manipulation of form, color, or texture to draw the viewer's attention to specific areas.
4. **Movement:** The path the viewer's eye follows through an artwork. In sculpture, movement can be implied through the arrangement of forms or the use of dynamic gestures, while in ceramics, it can be suggested through the flow of lines or patterns on the surface.
5. **Pattern:** The repetition of visual elements or motifs within an artwork. In ceramics and sculpture, pattern can be utilized to create rhythm and visual cohesion, whether through surface decoration or structural repetition.
6. **Proportion:** The relationship between the sizes of different elements within an artwork. In ceramics and sculpture, proportion is essential for creating a sense of harmony and balance in the overall composition.
7. **Unity:** The cohesive quality that makes an artwork feel complete and harmonious. In ceramics and sculpture, unity can be achieved through the consistent application of design elements, such as color schemes or texture treatments, throughout the piece.

Understanding and applying these principles and elements can greatly enhance the artistic expression and visual impact of ceramics and sculpture, allowing artists to create works that are not only visually compelling but also conceptually meaningful.

This page titled [10.1: Principles of Ceramic Design](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

10.2: Color in Ceramics- Glazes and Stains

The Basics of Slip Trailing

- Definition: Slip trailing involves using a liquid clay (slip) applied to a surface through a nozzle or applicator to create raised designs.
- Technique: The slip is applied in lines, dots, or patterns on leather-hard clay, creating a textured surface.
- Applications: It can enhance surface interest on functional or decorative ware and can be layered for complex designs.
- Tips: Use consistent pressure when squeezing the applicator to ensure even lines and test the slip's thickness for optimal flow.

Using Engobes for Surface Decoration

- Definition: Engobes are colored slips applied to greenware or bisqueware for a smooth, uniform finish.
- Technique: They can be brushed, sprayed, or dipped, offering versatility for covering large areas or adding detail.
- Applications: Engobes are ideal for adding blocks of color or layering under glazes to enhance depth and complexity.
- Tips: Mix the engobe well to prevent settling, and apply evenly to avoid streaks or cracking as it dries.

Combining Slip Trailing and Engobes

- Creative Potential: Use slip trailing over engobes to add dimensional details on a colored background.
- Layering Effects: Allow the engobe to dry partially before applying slip to ensure clean lines and reduce bleeding.
- Experimentation: Test different tools and techniques, such as fine tips or sponge applicators, for varied effects.
- Firing Considerations: Both slips and engobes should be compatible with the clay body and firing range to prevent peeling or cracking.

Sgraffito and Mishima

Sgraffito: Carving Through Layers

- Definition: Sgraffito involves carving through a colored slip or engobe to reveal the underlying clay body.
- Technique: Apply a layer of slip to leather-hard clay, let it dry slightly, and carve designs using sharp tools.
- Applications: Sgraffito creates intricate patterns and is often used for storytelling or decorative motifs.
- Tips: Keep your tools sharp for clean lines, and experiment with layering multiple slip colors for complex designs.

Mishima: Inlaid Slip Decoration

- Definition: Mishima involves incising lines into clay and filling them with colored slip to create smooth, inlaid designs.
- Technique: After carving the design, apply slip into the incisions and wipe away the excess, leaving the filled lines intact.
- Applications: Mishima is great for adding fine details or contrasting lines, often used on functional ware like bowls and plates.
- Tips: Ensure the clay is at the leather-hard stage for clean carving, and allow the slip to dry before wiping to avoid smearing.

Combining Sgraffito and Mishima

- Layered Effects: Combine both techniques to create detailed and textured surfaces with contrasting elements.
- Complementary Styles: Use sgraffito for bold patterns and Mishima for intricate details to balance the design.
- Creative Exploration: Experiment with different slip colors and clay bodies for unique visual contrasts.
- Durability: Properly compress and smooth the slip and clay to ensure the designs survive bisque and glaze firings.

This page titled [10.2: Color in Ceramics- Glazes and Stains](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

10.3: Texture and Pattern in Design

Stamping, Texturing, and Impressing

Using Stamps for Decoration

- Definition: Stamping involves pressing pre-made or custom stamps into clay to create repeated patterns or textures.
- Technique: Press the stamp into leather-hard or soft clay, using consistent pressure to avoid distortion.
- Applications: Ideal for borders, repeating motifs, or adding detail to functional pieces like mugs or plates.
- Tips: Keep stamps clean and slightly damp to prevent sticking, and test on scrap clay before applying to finished work.

Creating Textures with Found Objects

- Definition: Found objects like fabric, leaves, or shells can be pressed into clay to create organic textures.
- Technique: Roll or press the object firmly into the clay surface, then carefully lift it to reveal the imprint.
- Applications: Perfect for adding natural or abstract textures, enhancing sculptural or decorative pieces.
- Tips: Experiment with different materials, and test how deeply you press to control the final texture.

Impressing for Dimensional Effects

- Definition: Impressing involves pressing tools or objects into clay to create raised or recessed designs.
- Technique: Use ribs, rollers, or textured tools to emboss patterns onto soft or leather-hard clay.
- Applications: Works well for functional or decorative ware, adding depth to simple forms.
- Tips: Combine impressing with slip decoration or glazes for enhanced visual effects.

Underglaze Decoration

Painting with Underglazes

- Definition: Underglazes are colored slips or pigments that remain stable during firing, used to create detailed designs.
- Technique: Apply directly onto greenware or bisqueware using brushes, sponges, or stencils for precision.
- Applications: Perfect for illustrative work, layering, or adding vibrant color to functional and decorative pieces.
- Tips: Thin underglazes with water for softer effects or layer multiple coats for opaque coverage.

Layering and Masking Techniques

- Definition: Layering involves building up colors and patterns with underglazes, often using masking tools like tape or stencils.
- Technique: Apply one layer, allow it to dry, then use masking materials to block areas before adding the next layer.
- Applications: Great for creating crisp, multi-colored patterns or complex geometric designs.
- Tips: Allow each layer to dry completely to avoid smudging, and test masking materials for clean removal.

Combining Underglaze with Carving or Texturing

- Enhancing Texture: Apply underglaze over textured surfaces to emphasize depth and contrast.
- Sgraffito Integration: Use underglaze as a base layer for sgraffito techniques, carving through to reveal designs.
- Creative Effects: Experiment with underglaze washes to highlight impressed or stamped textures.
- Durability: Cover with a clear glaze for functional ware to protect the design and enhance color vibrancy.

Digital and Transfer Techniques

Using Decals for Surface Decoration

- Definition: Decals are pre-printed designs transferred to bisqueware or glazed surfaces for intricate, repeatable patterns.
- Technique: Soak the decal in water to release it from the backing paper, then apply it smoothly to the ceramic surface.
- Applications: Ideal for detailed imagery, logos, or text, especially on functional ware.
- Tips: Avoid air bubbles during application, and fire the piece at the appropriate temperature to fuse the decal.

Screen Printing with Underglazes

- Definition: Screen printing allows for precise application of underglazes through a fine mesh screen onto clay surfaces.
- Technique: Spread the underglaze evenly over the screen, pressing it through to transfer the design onto the clay.
- Applications: Best for creating bold, graphic patterns or replicating intricate designs on multiple pieces.
- Tips: Use a light touch to avoid smearing and test on scrap pieces before applying to final work.

This page titled [10.3: Texture and Pattern in Design](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

10.4: The Critique Process- Evaluating Your Work

This page titled [10.4: The Critique Process- Evaluating Your Work](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

10.5: Signing Your Work

What is a Chop in Ceramics?

In ceramics, a "chop" refers to a unique signature stamp or mark that an artist presses into their work, usually before the piece is fired. This stamp can be made from various materials, including clay, wood, or metal, and it often bears the artist's initials, logo, or a distinct symbol that represents them. The chop serves several purposes: it acts as a signature, verifying the piece's maker; it can be a mark of quality; and it often adds a personal, aesthetic touch to the work. Using a chop allows for consistency across an artist's work and helps collectors, galleries, and enthusiasts identify and attribute pieces to the correct artist. The tradition of marking ceramics with a chop has historical roots in many cultures, particularly in Asian ceramics, where potters' and artists' marks have been used for centuries.

What is the Mark Project in Ceramics?

The Mark Project in ceramics could refer to initiatives or efforts within the ceramics community aimed at documenting, studying, or celebrating the marks (including chops, stamps, and signatures) used by ceramic artists to identify their work. However, as of my last update, there isn't a widely recognized initiative specifically named "The Mark Project" within the ceramics world. It's possible that the concept could refer to a specific gallery exhibition, educational program, book, or database focusing on the significance of artist marks in ceramics.

In a broader sense, the interest in marks used by ceramists has led to several projects and resources over time, including databases and reference books that compile and explain the marks found on ceramic pieces. These resources serve scholars, collectors, and enthusiasts, helping them identify the creators of ceramic works, understand the history and provenance of pieces, and appreciate the individual styles and contributions of ceramists. They cover a wide range of marks, from ancient to contemporary times, and often include the context necessary to understand the evolution of ceramic art in various cultures.

If "The Mark Project" refers to a specific initiative, it would likely aim to catalog and interpret these identifying marks, contributing to the broader understanding and appreciation of ceramic art. It would be helpful to have more context or details about the project to provide a more precise description.

<https://www.themarksproject.org/>

This page titled [10.5: Signing Your Work](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

SECTION OVERVIEW

10.6: Life-Long Learning

Life-Long Learning

College-level ceramics classes provide students with a diverse range of skills that extend beyond technical proficiency in working with clay. Here are some skills gained in college-level ceramics classes and how they can transfer to real life, the workforce, and mental health:

1. **Technical Proficiency:** Students learn various hand-building and wheel-throwing techniques, glazing methods, and firing processes, honing their technical skills in ceramics production.
2. **Creativity and Innovation:** Through experimentation and exploration, students develop their creativity and innovative thinking, learning to generate and execute original ideas in their ceramic works.
3. **Problem-Solving:** Ceramics projects often present challenges that require problem-solving skills, such as addressing issues with clay consistency, glaze application, or kiln firing.
4. **Attention to Detail:** Working with clay requires careful attention to detail, from shaping forms to refining surface textures, helping students cultivate a keen eye for precision.
5. **Patience and Perseverance:** Ceramics is a process-oriented art form that demands patience and perseverance, teaching students the value of persistence and dedication in achieving their artistic goals.
6. **Critical Thinking:** Analyzing and critiquing ceramic artworks in class discussions and critiques fosters critical thinking skills, enabling students to evaluate their own work and that of others thoughtfully.
7. **Time Management:** Balancing multiple ceramic projects, studio time, and deadlines teaches students effective time management skills, which are valuable in both academic and professional settings.
8. **Communication Skills:** Collaborative projects and group critiques encourage students to articulate their ideas, provide constructive feedback, and engage in meaningful dialogue with peers and instructors.
9. **Adaptability:** Ceramics classes often expose students to a variety of materials, tools, and techniques, fostering adaptability and flexibility in their approach to art-making.
10. **Resilience:** Dealing with setbacks, such as pieces cracking or glaze failures, teaches students resilience and the ability to bounce back from challenges, which are essential life skills.

Transferable Skills

Transferable to real life and the workforce, these skills acquired in ceramics classes can benefit individuals in various ways:

- **Creative Industries:** Many graduates pursue careers as studio potters, ceramic artists, or designers, applying their skills in creating functional and decorative ceramic objects.
- **Education:** Some graduates become ceramics instructors or educators, sharing their knowledge and passion for ceramics with others through teaching, workshops, or community classes.
- **Entrepreneurship:** Those with business acumen may establish their own pottery studios, galleries, or online shops, leveraging their skills to sell handmade ceramics and manage business operations.
- **Manufacturing and Production:** Opportunities exist in ceramic manufacturing and production companies, where individuals can work in design, production management, quality control, or product development roles.
- **Health and Wellness:** Ceramics classes can also have positive effects on mental health, promoting mindfulness, stress relief, and self-expression through artistic expression and creative engagement with clay.
- **Therapeutic Applications:** Some individuals may pursue careers in art therapy or therapeutic ceramics, using clay as a medium for promoting emotional healing, self-discovery, and personal growth.

- Research and Development: Graduates with a passion for innovation may explore careers in ceramic materials research, developing new techniques, materials, and technologies for ceramic production.
- Museum and Gallery Curating: Those interested in art history and curation may find opportunities in museums, galleries, or cultural institutions, where they can curate ceramic exhibitions, conduct research, and engage with the public.
- Arts Administration: Positions in arts administration, such as gallery management, arts advocacy, or nonprofit leadership, offer opportunities to apply organizational and leadership skills within the arts sector.
- Community Engagement: Some individuals may work in community arts organizations or social enterprises, using ceramics as a tool for community engagement, cultural exchange, and social impact initiatives.

Overall, the skills gained in college-level ceramics classes not only prepare individuals for careers in the arts but also equip them with valuable life skills that can enhance their personal and professional development in a variety of fields.

Physical Health

1. Fine Motor Skills: Working with clay involves intricate hand movements and dexterity, which can improve fine motor skills and coordination.
2. Strength and Endurance: Kneading clay, operating pottery wheels, and lifting kiln shelves require physical strength and endurance, promoting muscle development and toning.
3. Flexibility: Manipulating clay through hand-building or wheel-throwing techniques can enhance flexibility in the hands, wrists, and arms.
4. Posture: Maintaining proper posture while working at the pottery wheel or hand-building can promote spinal alignment and prevent musculoskeletal strain.
5. Hand-Eye Coordination: Centering clay on the wheel or carving intricate designs requires precise hand-eye coordination, which can be improved through ceramic activities.

Cognitive Skills

1. Problem-Solving: Overcoming challenges encountered during the ceramic process, such as clay consistency issues or glaze defects, fosters problem-solving skills and critical thinking.
2. Spatial Awareness: Visualizing three-dimensional forms and planning ceramic compositions develop spatial awareness and visualization abilities.
3. Attention to Detail: Paying close attention to clay manipulation, surface decoration, and glaze application cultivates attention to detail and observation skills.
4. Creativity and Innovation: Experimentation with clay, glazes, and firing techniques encourages creative thinking and innovation in ceramic design.
5. Patience and Persistence: Ceramics is a process-oriented art form that requires patience and persistence, promoting resilience and perseverance in the face of challenges.
6. Memory Enhancement: Learning and recalling ceramic techniques, processes, and terminology can enhance memory retention and cognitive function.
7. Executive Functioning: Planning and executing ceramic projects involve organization, time management, and decision-making skills, which contribute to improved executive functioning.
8. Emotional Regulation: Engaging in ceramics provides a creative outlet for emotional expression and stress relief, promoting emotional regulation and well-being.

Overall, engaging in ceramics promotes a holistic approach to health and well-being by integrating physical activity with cognitive stimulation, creative expression, and emotional fulfillment.

10.6.1: Physical Health

10.6.2: Cognitive Skills

This page titled [10.6: Life-Long Learning](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

10.6.1: Physical Health

This page titled [10.6.1: Physical Health](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

10.6.2: Cognitive Skills

This page titled [10.6.2: Cognitive Skills](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

10.7: Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting

Principles of Ceramic Design

1. Proportions Seem Off: Use the golden ratio as a guideline for pleasing proportions, or create maquettes to study forms in miniature.
2. Design Feels Unbalanced: Experiment with visual weight distribution by adjusting the form's width, height, or decorative elements.

Color in Ceramics: Glazes and Stains

1. Colors Don't Match Expectations: Test glazes and stains on your clay body, as variations in composition can significantly affect the final color.
2. Fading Colors: Certain colors, especially underglazes, can fade at high temperatures. Adjust firing temperatures or apply over a white slip to enhance color brightness.

Texture and Pattern in Design

1. Textures Look Blurred After Firing: Apply textures more deeply than you think you need, as details can soften in the kiln.
2. Pattern Misalignment: Use reference marks when applying patterns to ensure alignment, especially on forms that curve or taper.

The Critique Process: Evaluating Your Work

1. Receiving Harsh Criticism: Focus on constructive elements of feedback and ask for specific suggestions for improvement.
2. Struggling to Articulate Thoughts: Prepare by writing down your thoughts and questions about your work in advance to facilitate discussion.

This page titled [10.7: Troubleshooting](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

11: The Professional Ceramic Artist

[11.1: Documenting and Photographing Ceramics](#)

[11.2: Strategies for Selling Your Work](#)

[11.3: Writing an Effective Artist Statement](#)

[11.4: Networking and Building Your Presence in the Ceramic Community](#)

[11.5: Residencies and Educational Opportunities](#)

[11.5.1: Notable Ceramics-Related Residencies in the US](#)

[11.5.2: Notable International Ceramics-Related Residencies](#)

[11.5.3: New Page](#)

This page titled [11: The Professional Ceramic Artist](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

11.1: Documenting and Photographing Ceramics

Best Practices for Photographing Ceramics: Lighting, Backgrounds, and Angles

- Lighting: Use natural, diffused light or soft studio lighting to reduce harsh shadows and highlight the textures and details of your work.
- Backgrounds: Choose neutral, solid-colored backgrounds to avoid distracting from the piece. White or gray is ideal for most ceramics.
- Angles: Capture multiple angles, including front, side, and detail shots, to showcase all aspects of your piece. Experiment with dynamic angles for more artistic presentations.
- Tip: Use a tripod to ensure stability and consistent framing, especially for close-up shots.

Creating a Visual Portfolio: Selecting and Organizing Images

- Selection: Curate your portfolio to include only your best work, ensuring a balance of forms, techniques, and styles.
- Organization: Arrange images by themes, series, or chronological order to tell a coherent story about your artistic journey.
- Descriptions: Include brief, engaging captions for each piece, detailing the materials, techniques, and inspiration behind the work.
- Tip: Regularly update your portfolio to reflect your most current and polished creations.

Writing Descriptions and Narratives for Your Pieces

- Purpose: Descriptions provide context for viewers and help them connect emotionally with your work.
- Details: Highlight the technical aspects, such as firing method, glaze effects, or clay type, while also sharing the story or inspiration behind the piece.
- Tone: Use accessible language that resonates with both casual admirers and knowledgeable collectors.
- Tip: Practice writing short and long descriptions to suit various platforms, from social media captions to gallery listings.

Digital Storage and Backup Strategies for Photographic Documentation

- Storage: Use cloud services (e.g., Google Drive, Dropbox) or external hard drives to store high-resolution images securely.
- Organization: Label files clearly with titles, dates, and details for easy retrieval. Use folders to group similar works.
- Backup: Maintain at least two backups—one local and one off-site—to protect against data loss.
- Tip: Regularly review and archive older images to declutter your storage while keeping a comprehensive record of your work.

Leveraging Social Media and Websites for Online Portfolios

- Social Media: Platforms like Instagram and Pinterest are visual-first, making them ideal for sharing ceramics. Post consistently and interact with your audience.
- Websites: Create a professional website showcasing your portfolio, artist statement, and contact information. Use platforms like Squarespace or Wix for ease of setup.
- SEO: Optimize captions and website text with relevant keywords to improve visibility in online searches.
- Tip: Link social media profiles to your website and vice versa for seamless cross-platform promotion.

This page titled [11.1: Documenting and Photographing Ceramics](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

11.2: Strategies for Selling Your Work

Pricing Strategies: Balancing Costs, Market Value, and Perceived Value

- Costs: Account for materials, time, studio expenses, and firing costs in your pricing formula.
- Market Value: Research similar works by peers to set competitive prices while reflecting the uniqueness of your pieces.
- Perceived Value: Enhance perceived value through storytelling, branding, and presentation. Higher-quality packaging can justify premium pricing.
- Tip: Offer a range of price points to appeal to diverse audiences, from collectors to casual buyers.

Online Sales Platforms vs. Physical Retail: Pros and Cons

- Online Platforms: Etsy, Shopify, and personal websites provide global reach but require consistent marketing to drive traffic.
- Physical Retail: Galleries and craft fairs offer local exposure and personal connections but often involve higher fees or commissions.
- Flexibility: Many artists use a combination of both to diversify their income streams and reach a broader audience.
- Tip: Evaluate each platform's costs and audience fit to determine the best mix for your business model.

Packaging and Shipping Ceramics Safely and Efficiently

- Packaging: Use double-boxing with plenty of padding (e.g., bubble wrap, foam) to prevent damage during transit.
- Shipping Services: Research reliable carriers with experience handling fragile items. Offer insurance for higher-value pieces.
- Labels: Clearly mark packages as “fragile” and include instructions for proper handling.
- Tip: Test your packaging by shipping a sample piece to yourself to identify potential issues.

Building Relationships with Galleries and Collectors

- Galleries: Approach galleries with a professional portfolio, clear pricing, and an understanding of their aesthetic. Maintain good communication and reliability.
- Collectors: Build trust with collectors by sharing insights into your process and offering personalized interactions.
- Follow-Up: Stay in touch with past buyers through newsletters or exclusive previews of new work.
- Tip: Treat every interaction as an opportunity to expand your network and reputation.

Marketing and Promotions: Telling Your Story to Sell Your Work

- Storytelling: Share the inspiration, process, and challenges behind your work to create an emotional connection with buyers.
- Promotions: Run limited-time offers, such as discounts or free shipping, to encourage sales during slower periods.
- Events: Host open studios, workshops, or online Q&A sessions to engage directly with your audience.
- Tip: Track the success of marketing efforts to refine your strategies and focus on what works.

This page titled [11.2: Strategies for Selling Your Work](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

11.3: Writing an Effective Artist Statement

The Purpose of an Artist Statement: Communicating Your Vision

- Connection: An artist statement bridges the gap between your work and the viewer, providing insight into your creative process.
- Purpose: It explains what drives your art, from themes and materials to techniques and personal influences.
- Audience: Tailor your statement to appeal to collectors, galleries, or casual viewers, ensuring it is accessible yet meaningful.
- Tip: Keep it concise, aiming for clarity over complexity.

Crafting a Clear, Concise, and Compelling Statement

- Opening Line: Start with a strong sentence that captures the essence of your work.
- Structure: Use a three-paragraph format: introduction, explanation of your process, and conclusion.
- Voice: Write in the first person for a personal touch, but maintain professionalism.
- Tip: Avoid jargon and focus on authenticity to resonate with a broad audience.

This page titled [11.3: Writing an Effective Artist Statement](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

11.4: Networking and Building Your Presence in the Ceramic Community

Engaging with Local, National, and International Ceramic Communities

- Local Communities: Join pottery guilds, attend local art fairs, and engage with nearby ceramic studios to build a supportive network. This allows for collaboration, shared resources, and mentorship opportunities.
- National Communities: Participate in events such as the National Council on Education for the Ceramic Arts (NCECA) to connect with a broader audience and stay updated on industry trends.
- International Connections: Attend international residencies, workshops, or online forums to learn from diverse cultural perspectives and techniques.
- Tip: Maintain active participation in these communities by volunteering or sharing your expertise to gain visibility and goodwill.

Participating in Shows, Fairs, and Exhibitions: Tips for Success

- Preparation: Research events to ensure they align with your style and target audience. Apply early and follow submission guidelines carefully.
- Display: Invest in professional displays that highlight your work's best features, such as lighting, pedestals, or branded signage.
- Networking: Use fairs and exhibitions to connect with other artists, gallery representatives, and potential buyers. Always carry business cards or postcards with contact information.
- Tip: Follow up with contacts made at events to nurture relationships and explore future opportunities.

The Importance of Mentorship and Collaboration

- Mentorship: Seek guidance from experienced ceramic artists to accelerate your learning and gain insights into the professional world.
- Collaboration: Partner with peers on projects, such as group exhibitions or shared studio spaces, to broaden your skillset and reach new audiences.
- Learning Exchange: Offer your own expertise in exchange for mentorship, creating mutually beneficial relationships.
- Tip: Be proactive in finding mentors and collaborators by reaching out through workshops, events, or social media.

Utilizing Social Media for Networking and Community Building

- Platforms: Use Instagram, TikTok, and Facebook to share your work and engage with the ceramic community. Consistently post quality content to build a following.
- Interaction: Comment on and share others' work to foster connections and show appreciation for your peers' efforts.
- Groups: Join specialized ceramic or art-focused groups to participate in discussions, share resources, and promote your work.
- Tip: Use hashtags and geo-tags to increase visibility and attract followers with similar interests.

Lifelong Learning: Workshops, Classes, and Conferences

- Workshops: Attend specialized workshops to learn new techniques, such as alternative firing methods or advanced surface decoration. These events are great for hands-on learning and networking.
- Classes: Enroll in local or online courses to refine your skills, especially in areas like glaze formulation, sculpting, or digital design.
- Conferences: Events like NCECA provide access to lectures, demonstrations, and exhibitions that inspire growth and innovation.
- Tip: View lifelong learning as an investment in your craft, ensuring you remain competitive and inspired as a professional.

This page titled [11.4: Networking and Building Your Presence in the Ceramic Community](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

SECTION OVERVIEW

11.5: Residencies and Educational Opportunities

Purpose of Art Residencies

Art residencies serve several important functions within the art world, offering artists unique opportunities to focus on their practice, gain new perspectives, and engage with a community of peers and mentors. Key purposes include:

1. **Dedicated Time and Space:** Residencies provide artists with the time and space to create, away from the distractions and obligations of their usual environments.
2. **Professional Development:** Artists can develop their skills, experiment with new techniques, and push the boundaries of their practice.
3. **Networking:** Residencies offer a chance to connect with other artists, curators, and professionals in the field, often leading to future collaborations and opportunities.
4. **Cultural Exchange:** Many residencies emphasize the exchange of ideas and cultures, enriching the artist's understanding and inspiring new work.
5. **Exposure and Recognition:** Residencies can enhance an artist's visibility, offering opportunities for exhibitions, open studios, and engagement with the local community and media.

11.5.1: Notable Ceramics-Related Residencies in the US

11.5.2: Notable International Ceramics-Related Residencies

11.5.3: New Page

This page titled [11.5: Residencies and Educational Opportunities](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

11.5.1: Notable Ceramics-Related Residencies in the US

Notable Ceramics-Related Residencies in the US

Archie Bray Foundation for the Ceramic Arts (Helena, MT)

- Features: Offers a stimulating environment for emerging and established ceramic artists to experiment and create new work. Residencies range from short-term to two years, with access to fully equipped studios and materials.

Watershed Center for the Ceramic Arts (Newcastle, ME)

- Features: Provides summer and fall residencies focusing on community and collaboration among artists. Facilities support a wide range of ceramic processes in a scenic, rural setting.

The Clay Studio (Philadelphia, PA)

- Features: Offers both short-term and long-term residencies for artists at different stages of their careers. The program includes access to studio space, materials, and opportunities for teaching, exhibitions, and community engagement.

Pewabic Pottery (Detroit, MI)

- Features: Known for its rich history in ceramic art, Pewabic offers a residency program that encourages artistic exploration and community involvement, including teaching opportunities and exhibitions.

Northern Clay Center (Minneapolis, MN)

- Features: Offers a variety of residency programs, including those for emerging artists and mid-career/established artists. Residents benefit from studio space, stipends, exhibition opportunities, and a vibrant urban ceramics community.

Penland School of Craft (Penland, NC)

- Features: Provides one- to two-year residencies in a supportive, community-oriented environment. The program is designed for artists who are at a pivotal point in their careers, offering studio space, teaching opportunities, and access to a wide range of craft disciplines.

Baltimore Clayworks (Baltimore, MD)

- Features: The residency program at Baltimore Clayworks is designed to encourage the creative, intellectual, and personal growth of emerging and established ceramic artists. Residents have access to studio space, firing facilities, and opportunities for exhibitions and teaching.

The Ceramic Studio at Harvard (Allston, MA)

- Features: Offers a residency program within the Ceramics Program, Office for the Arts at Harvard. It's designed for artists seeking to develop their work in a dynamic university setting, providing studio space, access to academic resources, and opportunities for community engagement.

Anderson Ranch Arts Center (Snowmass Village, CO)

- Features: Artists in the ceramics residency program have access to well-equipped studios and the opportunity to work within a community of artists across various disciplines. The program offers studio space, housing, and opportunities for exhibitions and professional development.

Arrowmont School of Arts and Crafts (Gatlinburg, TN)

- Features: The Artist-in-Residence program provides early-career artists with a supportive environment to develop their practice, including studio space, housing, and exhibition opportunities. The program emphasizes community engagement and professional growth.

[Greenwich House Pottery \(New York, NY\)](#)

- Features: This historic ceramics studio offers a fellowship program for artists to develop their work within the vibrant arts community of New York City. The fellowship includes studio space, materials, firing, and exhibition opportunities.

[Mendocino Art Center \(Mendocino, CA\)](#)

- Features: The ceramics residency at the Mendocino Art Center is designed for both emerging and established artists, offering studio space in a picturesque coastal setting. Residents benefit from community engagement, teaching opportunities, and studio facilities.

[Red Lodge Clay Center \(Red Lodge, MT\)](#)

- Features: Offers short-term and long-term residencies for ceramic artists. The program is designed to promote artistic exchange and development, providing studio space, housing, material and firing stipends, and exhibition opportunities.

This page titled [11.5.1: Notable Ceramics-Related Residencies in the US](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

11.5.2: Notable International Ceramics-Related Residencies

Notable International Ceramics-Related Residencies

International Ceramic Research Center (Guldagergaard, Denmark)

- Features: A world-renowned ceramic research center offering residencies that include access to state-of-the-art facilities, technical support, and an inspiring international community. Artists can engage in research, development, and experimentation.

Shigaraki Ceramic Cultural Park (Shigaraki, Japan)

- Features: Located in one of Japan's most famous pottery towns, this residency offers artists the chance to immerse themselves in the rich heritage of Japanese ceramics, with access to extensive facilities and materials.

The Banff Centre (Banff, Alberta, Canada)

- Features: Provides thematic residencies for artists interested in exploring new ideas and approaches to clay. Participants benefit from the stunning natural environment, studio space, and the guidance of experienced faculty.

La Meridiana (Tuscany, Italy)

- Features: Offers residencies and workshops in a picturesque Tuscan setting, with facilities supporting a wide range of ceramic processes. Artists can explore traditional Italian ceramic techniques as well as contemporary practices.

This page titled [11.5.2: Notable International Ceramics-Related Residencies](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

11.5.3: New Page

Documenting and Photographing Ceramics

1. Photos Lack Depth: Use a neutral background and natural light to highlight textures and colors without overpowering the piece.
2. Images Not True to Color: Calibrate your camera settings or post-process images to match the actual colors of your ceramics.

Strategies for Selling Your Work

1. Pricing Challenges: Research the market and factor in your time, materials, overhead, and the uniqueness of each piece to set fair prices.
2. Finding Your Audience: Engage with communities both online and in real life to find those who appreciate and seek out your work.

Writing an Effective Artist Statement

1. Statement Sounds Generic: Include specific inspirations, techniques, and the story behind your work to connect more personally with your audience.
2. Difficulty Starting: Begin by simply listing words or phrases that describe your work and values, then expand into sentences.

Networking and Building Your Presence in the Ceramic Community

1. Feeling Isolated: Join ceramic associations, online forums, and social media groups to connect with peers and share experiences.
2. Not Getting Noticed: Participate in exhibitions, craft fairs, and open studios. Online, engage with others' content genuinely while sharing your own.

Residencies

Tip: Apply to residencies that align with your artistic goals and provide resources that support your creative vision.

Tip: Research application deadlines and prepare a strong portfolio tailored to each program's specific focus.

Tip: Consider residencies abroad to broaden your artistic perspective and gain global exposure.

This page titled [11.5.3: New Page](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

12: Digital Technologies in Ceramic Art

The integration of digital technologies into ceramics opens new possibilities for creativity and efficiency in the art form. Tools like CAD software, 3D printers, and digital fabrication techniques allow artists to explore intricate designs and forms that may be difficult or impossible to achieve by hand. These technologies complement traditional methods, enabling artists to blend handcrafted techniques with digital precision. By embracing digital tools, ceramicists can push the boundaries of their work and contribute to the evolving landscape of contemporary ceramics.

This page titled [12: Digital Technologies in Ceramic Art](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

12.1: Designing with CAD and Rhino for Ceramics

Introduction to CAD (Computer-Aided Design) and Rhino for Creating Ceramic Designs

- What It Is: CAD software like Rhino allows ceramic artists to digitally model their designs with precision and flexibility. These tools are ideal for creating complex, detailed forms and experimenting with various design elements.
- Why It's Important: Digital modeling streamlines the design process, enabling artists to visualize and refine their ideas before beginning physical production.
- How It Works: Using Rhino's advanced tools, artists can create 3D models, adjust proportions, and incorporate intricate textures into their designs.
- Tip: Beginners should start with basic shapes and gradually explore more complex modeling techniques through tutorials and experimentation.

Translating Digital Designs into Physical Ceramic Objects

- Conversion Process: Once a design is complete, it can be exported as a file compatible with 3D printers or CNC routers, bridging the gap between digital and physical creation.
- Applications: This process is particularly useful for creating prototypes, functional ware, or decorative elements with high precision.
- Benefits: Digital designs can be scaled, duplicated, or modified easily, making them suitable for both one-of-a-kind pieces and production runs.
- Tip: Test-print designs with inexpensive materials or smaller scales before committing to full-scale ceramic production.

Using Software to Simulate and Adjust Patterns and Textures

- Simulation Tools: Rhino and similar programs allow artists to preview how patterns, textures, or carving might appear on a 3D surface.
- Flexibility: These simulations enable adjustments to be made quickly, avoiding costly mistakes during physical production.
- Customization: Artists can design unique patterns that integrate seamlessly with the form, enhancing the final piece's aesthetic.
- Tip: Experiment with parametric design tools to create dynamic, evolving textures that respond to changes in the model's geometry.

The Benefits of Digital Tools in Planning Complex or Large-Scale Ceramic Pieces

- Efficiency: CAD software simplifies the planning of intricate designs that would be time-intensive or challenging to create by hand.
- Accuracy: Digital tools ensure that dimensions and proportions remain consistent, even in large or multipart projects.
- Visualization: Artists can render detailed previews, helping them plan glaze application, firing techniques, and assembly processes.
- Tip: Use CAD to create sectional views or templates for large-scale pieces to guide construction and ensure structural stability.

Case Studies of Artists Who Effectively Use CAD and Rhino in Their Ceramic Work

- Examples: Artists like Del Harrow and Jonathan Keep have pioneered the use of CAD in ceramics, blending technology with traditional techniques to create innovative works.
- Process: These artists use CAD for both sculptural and functional projects, leveraging its precision and versatility to expand their creative potential.
- Inspiration: Their work demonstrates how digital tools can enhance artistic expression without sacrificing the tactile qualities of ceramics.

- Tip: Study their workflows and experiment with similar approaches to find your unique voice in the intersection of ceramics and technology.

This page titled [12.1: Designing with CAD and Rhino for Ceramics](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

12.2: 3D Printing with Clay Extrusions

Overview of 3D Printing

3D Printing Technology and Its Application in Ceramics

- How It Works: Ceramic 3D printers use extruded clay to build objects layer by layer, guided by a digital model.
- Applications: This technology is ideal for creating intricate patterns, complex forms, or repeated elements with high precision.
- Benefits: 3D printing reduces labor-intensive processes, enabling faster prototyping and greater creative exploration.
- Tip: Familiarize yourself with basic 3D printing principles before diving into ceramic-specific applications.

Choosing the Right Type of Clay Body for 3D Printing

- Consistency Matters: The clay must have the right plasticity and moisture content to extrude smoothly without collapsing.
- Types: Porcelain, stoneware, or earthenware can be used, depending on the desired aesthetic and functional properties.
- Testing: Experiment with different clay recipes to find the best fit for your printer and project.
- Tip: Sieve the clay thoroughly to remove impurities that could clog the extruder.

Design Considerations Specific to 3D Printed Ceramics

- Structural Integrity: Designs must account for the layering process, avoiding overhangs or thin sections that could collapse.
- Aesthetic Choices: Embrace the layered texture as a design feature or plan for post-processing to smooth the surface.
- Scaling: Ensure the design is appropriately scaled to the printer's capabilities and the clay's shrinkage rate.
- Tip: Use supports or scaffolding for complex designs to maintain stability during printing.

Finishing Techniques for 3D Printed Objects

- Smoothing: Wet sponges or ribs can be used to refine the surface before firing.
- Detailing: Additional textures or hand-built elements can be added to the printed piece for a hybrid aesthetic.
- Glazing: Consider how the layered texture will interact with glaze application, enhancing or obscuring the pattern.
- Tip: Test different firing schedules to ensure the printed structure holds up under high temperatures.

Exploring the Creative and Functional Potential of 3D Printed Ceramics

- Creative Possibilities: 3D printing enables intricate lattice structures, repeating patterns, and geometric precision not achievable by hand.
- Functional Applications: Printed ceramics are used for architectural elements, prototypes, and functional ware with innovative designs.
- Artistic Innovation: Combining 3D printing with traditional methods opens new avenues for hybrid techniques and experimental aesthetics.
- Tip: Push boundaries by exploring unconventional forms or combining 3D printed components with hand-built elements.

The application of 3D printing technology in ceramics, focusing on clay extrusion methods, is explored. This section covers selecting appropriate clay bodies for 3D printing, design considerations specific to the medium, and finishing techniques for printed objects. The creative and functional potentials of 3D printed ceramics are emphasized, showcasing innovative examples.

3D Potter is a company that specializes in the design and manufacturing of ceramic 3D printers, which are tools capable of extruding clay to create three-dimensional ceramic objects layer by layer. Their products are designed to cater to a wide range of needs, from small-scale studio projects to large-scale architectural or public works. 3D Potter printers leverage the precision and repeatability of digital fabrication while maintaining the artistic integrity and material qualities unique to ceramics.

Products for Small Projects in a Ceramics Studio

For small projects and individual studio environments, 3D Potter offers compact and user-friendly ceramic 3D printers that can fit within a studio setting without requiring extensive space. These printers are suitable for creating intricate designs, custom pieces, experimental forms, or functional ware such as cups, vases, and plates. They enable artists and designers to explore complex geometries that would be challenging or impossible to achieve with traditional hand-building or wheel-throwing techniques.

Benefits for Small Projects:

- Precision and Customization: Artists can design their pieces using 3D modeling software, allowing for intricate details and precision that can be directly translated into the clay medium.
- Efficiency: Small batches of customized pieces or prototypes can be produced more quickly compared to traditional methods, ideal for testing designs or creating unique, limited-edition artworks.
- Educational Tool: In an educational setting, these printers serve as excellent tools for teaching digital fabrication techniques, merging traditional ceramic craft with modern technology.

Products for Large Public Work Projects

For larger public works or architectural projects, 3D Potter offers high-capacity ceramic 3D printers capable of handling significant volumes of clay and printing large-scale objects. These printers can be used to produce architectural components, large-scale sculptures, and complex, site-specific installations. With the ability to extrude larger amounts of clay and support larger build volumes, these printers open up new possibilities for public art, architectural design, and landscape projects.

Benefits for Large Projects:

- Scalability: Capable of producing large pieces that can be part of bigger installations or standalone public artworks, offering new opportunities for artists working in the public realm.
- Collaboration: These printers enable collaboration between artists, architects, and designers, merging artistic vision with architectural and design principles to create innovative public spaces and structures.
- Innovation in Materials and Form: The ability to experiment with different types of clay bodies and to create forms that challenge traditional construction methods can lead to new aesthetics and functionalities in ceramic materials.

Overall Impact in a Ceramics Studio

In both small and large project contexts, 3D Potter's ceramic 3D printers act as a bridge between traditional ceramic craftsmanship and digital fabrication technology. They provide ceramists, artists, and designers with the tools to expand their creative boundaries, explore new forms, and increase efficiency in production. The integration of these printers into a ceramics studio or a larger-scale project setting not only enhances the capabilities of the artists but also enriches the potential for innovative ceramics in contemporary art and design.

This page titled [12.2: 3D Printing with Clay Extrusions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

12.3: Integrating Digital Fabrication Techniques

Combining Handcrafted and Digitally Fabricated Elements in Ceramic Art

- Balance: Use digital tools to enhance handmade work rather than replace it, preserving the tactile quality of ceramics.
- Hybrid Techniques: Combine 3D printed components with hand-built or wheel-thrown elements for unique designs.
- Aesthetic Integration: Ensure the digital and handmade elements complement each other in texture, form, and finish.
- Tip: Experiment with layering techniques to create visually compelling contrasts between the two approaches.

Creating Molds and Templates Using Digital Fabrication Tools

- Precision: CNC routers or laser cutters can create detailed molds and templates for slip casting or press molding.
- Efficiency: Digital molds reduce the time and effort required to create consistent, repeatable forms.
- Customization: Modify digital files to create variations within a series, adding uniqueness to each piece.
- Tip: Use molds as a starting point, then add hand-built details for one-of-a-kind results.

The Role of Digital Techniques in Custom Glaze Creation and Application

- Glaze Design: Software can simulate glaze interactions and predict firing outcomes, streamlining the experimentation process.
- Application: Digital tools like spray booths or automated glaze applicators ensure even, precise coating.
- Consistency: Digital techniques enable consistent results across multiple pieces, ideal for production settings.
- Tip: Use digital tools to map glaze application onto complex forms, enhancing their visual appeal.

Ethical and Aesthetic Considerations in Digital Fabrication

- Ethics: Consider issues of authorship and originality when using shared digital files or automated tools.
- Aesthetics: Strive for harmony between the precision of digital fabrication and the organic qualities of clay.
- Balance: Avoid over-reliance on technology, ensuring your work reflects your artistic vision and skill.
- Tip: Engage with the broader ceramics community to discuss and navigate these challenges collaboratively.

Future Directions: How Digital Technologies Are Shaping the Future of Ceramic Art

- Innovation: Emerging technologies like AI and robotics will continue to expand the possibilities for ceramic design and production.
- Sustainability: Digital tools can reduce material waste and energy usage, contributing to more eco-friendly practices.
- Accessibility: Advances in technology will make digital fabrication tools more affordable and widely available to artists.
- Tip: Stay informed about technological developments and experiment with integrating them into your practice.

This page titled [12.3: Integrating Digital Fabrication Techniques](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

12.4: Troubleshooting

This page titled [12.4: Troubleshooting](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

13: Advanced Sculptural Techniques in Ceramics

[13.1: Sculpting with Paper Clay](#)

[13.2: Using Soft Armatures in Ceramic Sculpture](#)

[13.3: Incorporating Hard Armatures](#)

[13.4: Tar Paper Form Templates](#)

[13.5: Troubleshooting](#)

This page titled [13: Advanced Sculptural Techniques in Ceramics](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

13.1: Sculpting with Paper Clay

Paper Clay

Advanced sculptural techniques empower ceramic artists to create intricate and ambitious works, pushing the limits of form and structure. This chapter explores methods like using paper clay, armatures, and innovative templates, offering tools for tackling complex sculptures. By combining practical techniques with creative freedom, artists can achieve dynamic, detailed, and experimental pieces. These methods bridge traditional craftsmanship with contemporary approaches, enriching the sculptural possibilities of ceramics.

The Unique Properties of Paper Clay and Its Advantages for Sculptural Work

- Composition: Paper clay is traditional clay mixed with cellulose fibers, which increases its flexibility and strength.
- Advantages: It's less prone to cracking, allows for easy joining even when dry, and can be used for delicate or intricate forms.
- Adaptability: Artists can build large sculptures or repair dry pieces without worrying about shrinkage incompatibilities.
- Tip: Paper clay is ideal for detailed textures, intricate designs, and experimental forms that might fail with traditional clay.

Techniques for Mixing and Preparing Your Own Paper Clay

- Materials: Blend shredded paper (like recycled office paper) with water to create a pulp, then mix it into wedged clay.
- Proportions: Use approximately 10–20% paper pulp by weight for the best balance of strength and plasticity.
- Consistency: Ensure the mixture is even and smooth; a pug mill can help with larger batches.
- Tip: Store prepared paper clay in airtight containers to retain moisture and usability.

Strategies for Building and Sculpting with Paper Clay to Achieve Fine Details and Delicate Structures

- Construction: Use the added flexibility of paper clay to sculpt thin walls or extend forms without immediate support.
- Joining: Slip made from paper clay bonds exceptionally well to dry or leather-hard pieces, simplifying the assembly of multi-part sculptures.
- Experimentation: Incorporate unconventional shapes or overhangs that would typically require armatures.
- Tip: Keep the surface moist as you work to maintain the clay's workability for longer periods.

Drying and Firing Considerations Specific to Paper Clay Sculptures

- Drying: Paper clay dries faster than traditional clay, so slow drying may be necessary to avoid warping or cracking.
- Firing: The cellulose fibers burn out during firing, leaving behind a strong yet lightweight ceramic structure.
- Ventilation: Ensure kilns are well-ventilated to manage the release of gases from the burned paper fibers.
- Tip: Test small pieces before firing large sculptures to ensure firing schedules accommodate the material.

Inspirational Examples of Paper Clay Sculpture by Contemporary Artists

- Notable Artists: Artists like Rebecca Hutchinson and Jerry Bennett use paper clay for its sculptural versatility.
- Applications: Their works demonstrate how paper clay supports large-scale constructions, delicate details, and mixed-media integrations.
- Influence: These examples inspire creative exploration, showing how traditional and unconventional forms thrive with paper clay.
- Tip: Study their techniques and adapt them to your unique sculptural goals.

This page titled [13.1: Sculpting with Paper Clay](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

13.2: Using Soft Armatures in Ceramic Sculpture

Defining Soft Armatures and Their Applications in Ceramics

- What They Are: Soft armatures are temporary frameworks made from pliable materials like foam, fabric, or newspaper.
- Purpose: They support clay structures during the building process, especially for hollow or overhanging forms.
- Flexibility: These armatures adapt to the clay's shape and are easy to remove or integrate into the final piece.
- Tip: Soft armatures are ideal for experimental forms where rigidity would hinder creativity.

Materials and Methods for Creating Effective Soft Armatures

- Common Materials: Use materials like sponges, chicken wire, or biodegradable paper for flexible yet supportive structures.
- Assembly: Shape the armature to match your design, ensuring it can support the weight of wet clay.
- Compatibility: Consider how the armature interacts with clay moisture—some materials may require sealing to prevent water absorption.
- Tip: Test your armature design with small-scale projects before applying it to larger sculptures.

Building Larger, Complex Forms with the Support of Soft Armatures

- Step-by-Step: Start with a sturdy base, layer clay over the armature in stages, and allow partial drying for stability.
- Techniques: Incorporate coils or slabs to build large volumes while maintaining structural integrity.
- Scaling: Use modular armature components for easy removal in multi-part sculptures.
- Tip: Support the base adequately to prevent collapse under the weight of upper sections.

Considerations for Removing Armatures or Leaving Them in Place

- Temporary Use: Remove soft armatures before firing to avoid contamination or damage from non-ceramic materials.
- Integrated Armatures: In some cases, soft armatures can remain part of the finished sculpture, adding mixed-media elements.
- Timing: Remove armatures when the clay is leather-hard but not fully dry to avoid structural stress.
- Tip: Design armatures with removal in mind, ensuring they can slide out without damaging the sculpture.

Creative and Practical Examples of Soft Armatures in Action

- Applications: Artists use soft armatures for organic forms, large installations, or experimental textures.
- Inspirations: Sculptures with dynamic shapes or intricate openings often rely on soft armatures for support.
- Versatility: These examples show how armatures enable creativity while maintaining practical feasibility.
- Tip: Study examples to inspire your projects, tailoring armature designs to your artistic goals.

This page titled [13.2: Using Soft Armatures in Ceramic Sculpture](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

13.3: Incorporating Hard Armatures

The Use of Hard Armatures in Supporting and Shaping Ceramic Sculptures

- Definition: Hard armatures are rigid frameworks made from materials like metal rods, wood, or plastic.
- Purpose: They provide structural support for heavy or large sculptures, especially during construction and firing.
- Durability: These armatures handle weight and complex forms better than soft alternatives.
- Tip: Hard armatures are essential for monumental or outdoor sculptures.

Selecting Materials for Hard Armatures Based on Firing Temperatures and Sculpture Size

- Material Choices: Use stainless steel or nichrome wire for high-temperature firings, and aluminum or wood for room-temperature applications.
- Size Considerations: Match the armature's strength to the scale of your sculpture to ensure stability.
- Compatibility: Avoid materials that might expand excessively during firing, causing cracks.
- Tip: Test material behavior at your firing temperature before committing to large projects.

Techniques for Assembling and Dismantling Hard Armatures

- Assembly: Secure armature components with welds, screws, or clamps to ensure stability during the construction phase.
- Integration: Build clay forms directly onto the armature, ensuring even coverage and accounting for shrinkage during drying and firing.
- Dismantling: If the armature is temporary, ensure there are release points or modular sections that allow for easy removal without damaging the sculpture.
- Tip: Design armatures with disassembly in mind, especially for large-scale or multi-part works.

Safety and Practical Tips for Working with Hard Armatures in Ceramics

- Safety First: Wear protective gear, such as gloves and goggles, when cutting, welding, or assembling metal components.
- Weight Management: Ensure your workspace can support the combined weight of the armature and clay.
- Testing: Test the armature's strength by applying pressure or weight increments to simulate the clay load.
- Tip: Use padded supports or rubber feet on the armature base to prevent damage to your studio surfaces.

Case Studies Showcasing the Innovative Use of Hard Armatures

- Large-Scale Installations: Artists like Stephen De Staebler have used metal armatures to create towering sculptures that remain stable and structurally sound.
- Mixed Media: Incorporating visible armatures as part of the final design adds an industrial or architectural aesthetic.
- Dynamic Forms: Hard armatures allow for dramatic angles, overhangs, or suspended elements that push the boundaries of ceramic sculpture.
- Tip: Study these works for inspiration on how armatures can enable creative freedom and structural innovation.

This page titled [13.3: Incorporating Hard Armatures](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

13.4: Tar Paper Form Templates

Introduction to Using Tar Paper as a Form-Making Tool in Ceramics

- What It Is: Tar paper is a flexible, durable material that can be shaped into templates or molds for building clay forms.
- Advantages: It's lightweight, inexpensive, and easy to cut, making it an ideal material for sculptural ceramics.
- Applications: Use tar paper for creating symmetrical forms, precise curves, or unique structures.
- **Tip:** Test the tar paper on small projects first to get a feel for its flexibility and strength.

Designing and Cutting Tar Paper Templates for Complex Ceramic Forms

- Planning: Sketch your design on paper before transferring it to the tar paper. Ensure the template dimensions account for clay shrinkage.
- Cutting: Use sharp scissors or a craft knife for clean, precise edges. Reinforce weak points with tape or additional layers of tar paper.
- Adjustments: Tar paper can be folded or layered to create complex shapes and textures.
- **Tip:** Label each piece of your template to avoid confusion during assembly.

Assembling and Using Tar Paper Templates in the Construction Process

- Assembly: Use tape, clips, or binder clips to hold the tar paper together while forming the clay around it.
- Application: Press clay slabs onto the template or use the template as a guide for coiling and building.
- Stability: Ensure the template is stable during construction by weighting it down or attaching it to a solid base.
- **Tip:** Remove the template once the clay reaches leather-hard stage to prevent deformation.

Benefits and Limitations of Tar Paper Templates in Sculptural Ceramics

- Benefits: They are reusable, easy to customize, and allow for precise construction of complex forms.
- Limitations: Tar paper is not ideal for very large or heavy forms, as it may lose stability under significant weight.
- Alternative Uses: Tar paper can also be used to create textures by pressing it into the clay surface.
- **Tip:** Combine tar paper templates with other armature techniques for enhanced versatility.

Creative Applications and Examples of Tar Paper Templates in Contemporary Work

- Applications: Artists use tar paper to create precise geometric sculptures, symmetrical vessels, and unique modular designs.
- Inspiration: The work of ceramists like Matt Wedel demonstrates how templates can enhance the precision and repeatability of complex forms.
- Experimentation: Use tar paper templates for experimental designs that challenge traditional ceramic techniques.
- **Tip:** Document your process to refine your template-making skills and improve future projects.

This page titled [13.4: Tar Paper Form Templates](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

13.5: Troubleshooting

Sculpting with Paper Clay

- Problem: Weak Joints or Attachments
- Solution: Use slip made from the same paper clay mixture to ensure compatibility and a stronger bond.
- Problem: Drying Cracks
- Solution: Slow down the drying process by covering the sculpture with plastic or a damp cloth to prevent rapid moisture loss.

Using Soft Armatures in Ceramic Sculpture

- Problem: Armature Collapses Under Weight
- Solution: Build in stages, allowing lower sections to stiffen before adding more clay. Use denser materials like foam for additional support.
- Problem: Difficulties Removing Armature
- Solution: Use materials like biodegradable paper or plastic wrap that can be dissolved or easily removed once the clay stiffens.

Incorporating Hard Armatures

- Problem: Armature Causes Cracking
- Solution: Ensure a consistent clay thickness around the armature and allow for shrinkage during drying and firing.
- Problem: Armature Becomes Exposed After Firing
- Solution: Account for the clay body's shrinkage rate during design and firing stages to prevent gaps.

Tar Paper Form Templates

- Problem: Templates Warp During Construction
- Solution: Use thicker tar paper or reinforce with additional layers to maintain shape and stability.
- Problem: Removing Tar Paper Leaves Residue
- Solution: Wait until the clay is leather-hard before removing the template, and clean any residue with a damp sponge.

This page titled [13.5: Troubleshooting](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

14: Ceramics in Environmental and Humanitarian Solutions

Ceramics play a vital role in addressing global challenges, from improving access to clean water to promoting sustainable agricultural practices. This chapter explores innovative applications of ceramic techniques and materials to solve pressing environmental and humanitarian issues. Through ceramic water filtration systems and Olla irrigation vessels, artists and engineers alike demonstrate the power of ceramics to transform lives. These projects highlight the intersection of traditional knowledge and modern innovation in creating a more sustainable future.

[14.1: Ceramic Water Filtration Systems](#)

[14.2: The Resurgence of Olla Water Vessels](#)

[14.3: Troubleshooting](#)

This page titled [14: Ceramics in Environmental and Humanitarian Solutions](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

14.1: Ceramic Water Filtration Systems

The Principle and Effectiveness of Ceramic Water Filters in Purifying Water

- **How It Works:** Ceramic water filters are made from porous clay, which traps bacteria and particulates while allowing clean water to pass through.
- **Applications:** These filters are used worldwide to provide safe drinking water in areas lacking access to clean sources.
- **Effectiveness:** With proper maintenance, ceramic filters can remove up to 99% of bacteria and pathogens, significantly reducing waterborne illnesses.
- **Tip:** The addition of silver or other antimicrobial agents enhances the filtration process by killing bacteria that pass through the clay pores.

The Process of Making Ceramic Filters, Including Material Selection and Firing Techniques

- **Clay Body:** Filters are made from a mix of clay and combustible materials like sawdust or rice husks, which burn out during firing to create the necessary porosity.
- **Shaping:** Filters are typically molded into cone or disk shapes to fit into filtration units.
- **Firing:** The clay is fired at a temperature that ensures durability while maintaining porosity, usually around 850–1000°C (1562–1832°F).
- **Tip:** Test the porosity and strength of fired filters before distributing them for use.

The Global Impact of Ceramic Filtration on Improving Water Quality in Underserved Communities

- **Widespread Use:** Ceramic filters are an affordable, low-tech solution used in rural and urban areas across Africa, Asia, and Latin America.
- **Health Benefits:** Communities using these filters report a significant drop in waterborne diseases like cholera and dysentery.
- **Sustainability:** Filters are reusable and require minimal maintenance, making them an environmentally friendly alternative to bottled water.
- **Tip:** Education programs on filter usage and maintenance increase their long-term effectiveness.

Challenges and Innovations in the Development of Ceramic Water Filters

- **Challenges:** Variability in clay sources and firing methods can lead to inconsistent filter quality.
- **Innovations:** Advances in material science have led to more efficient filters with added antimicrobial coatings and increased durability.
- **Community Involvement:** Engaging local artisans in filter production ensures cultural acceptance and economic benefits.
- **Tip:** Standardized testing protocols help ensure filters meet health and safety requirements.

Collaborations and Projects That Exemplify the Use of Ceramics in Water Filtration

- **Examples:** Organizations like Potters for Peace and PATH lead initiatives to distribute ceramic water filters worldwide.
- **Community Impact:** These projects empower local communities by training residents to produce and maintain filters.
- **Global Recognition:** Ceramic water filters are recognized by health organizations as a key tool in combating water scarcity and contamination.
- **Tip:** Support these projects by donating or volunteering with organizations promoting ceramic water filtration.

This page titled [14.1: Ceramic Water Filtration Systems](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

14.2: The Resurgence of Olla Water Vessels

Historical Background and Traditional Use of Olla Vessels for Irrigation

- Origins: Ollas date back thousands of years, used by Indigenous peoples in arid regions for efficient irrigation.
- How They Work: These unglazed clay pots are buried in soil, slowly releasing water directly to plant roots through their porous walls.
- Traditional Wisdom: The method conserves water by reducing evaporation and runoff, making it ideal for dry climates.
- Tip: Study historical irrigation practices to adapt Ollas for modern applications.

Benefits of Using Ollas in Modern Sustainable Agriculture and Gardening

- Water Conservation: Ollas reduce water usage by up to 70% compared to conventional irrigation methods.
- Plant Health: They provide consistent moisture to plant roots, promoting healthy growth and reducing water stress.
- Ease of Use: Once installed, Ollas require minimal maintenance, making them ideal for community gardens and urban agriculture.
- Tip: Pair Ollas with drought-resistant plants for maximum efficiency in water-scarce regions.

Techniques for Making and Installing Olla Vessels

- Making: Ollas are typically thrown or coiled from low-fire clay and left unglazed to maintain porosity.
- Sizing: Choose vessel sizes based on the size of the garden or planting area; larger Ollas irrigate more plants.
- Installation: Bury the Olla so that only the neck is visible above ground, fill it with water, and let it seep into the soil.
- Tip: Seal any cracks in the clay before installation to prevent leaks.

The Impact of Ollas on Water Conservation Efforts Worldwide

- Global Adoption: Ollas are gaining popularity in regions facing water scarcity, such as California, sub-Saharan Africa, and India.
- Environmental Benefits: By reducing the need for large-scale irrigation systems, Ollas help conserve energy and resources.
- Community Projects: Nonprofits and local governments are promoting the use of Ollas in community gardens and small-scale farming.
- Tip: Advocate for Olla irrigation in your local area to support sustainable gardening practices.

Stories of Communities and Individuals Revitalizing the Olla Tradition

- Examples: Farmers in Mexico and gardeners in California have revived Olla techniques to combat drought conditions.
- Cultural Preservation: These efforts celebrate traditional knowledge while addressing modern environmental challenges.
- Collaborative Impact: Local artisans create Ollas for their communities, blending cultural heritage with practical solutions.
- Tip: Support artists and programs that combine traditional craftsmanship with environmental sustainability.

This page titled [14.2: The Resurgence of Olla Water Vessels](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

14.3: Troubleshooting

Ceramic Water Filtration Systems

1. Filter Pores Too Large:

- Solution: Adjust the clay-to-burnout material ratio and slightly increase firing temperature to achieve finer pores.

2. Filters Break Easily:

- Solution: Add grog or other strengthening agents to the clay body without compromising porosity.

The Resurgence of Olla Water Vessels

1. Ollas Clog Over Time:

- Solution: Periodically clean the interior of the Olla with a vinegar solution to dissolve mineral deposits.

2. Uneven Water Dispersion:

- Solution: Test soil composition and adjust the placement of Ollas to ensure optimal coverage for plant roots.

This page titled [14.3: Troubleshooting](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

15: Innovative Uses of Ceramics

Ceramics is no longer confined to traditional art and craft; its versatility has expanded into groundbreaking roles in technology, industry, and sustainability. This chapter explores the material's advanced applications, from electronics to eco-friendly practices. These innovations showcase ceramics' potential to address contemporary challenges, blending science, design, and environmental consciousness. By examining its evolving uses, we can appreciate ceramics as a dynamic force for innovation.

[15.1: Ceramics in Modern Technology and Industry](#)

[15.2: Sustainable and Eco-Friendly Ceramic Practices](#)

[15.3: Troubleshooting](#)

This page titled [15: Innovative Uses of Ceramics](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

15.1: Ceramics in Modern Technology and Industry

Ceramics' Critical Role in Electronic Components

- Applications: Advanced ceramics are essential in electronics, used as insulators, capacitors, and resistors due to their high thermal and electrical resistance.
- Significance: Their ability to perform reliably in extreme conditions makes them indispensable in industries like telecommunications and computing.
- Miniaturization: Ceramic materials enable the development of compact, high-performance devices by maintaining functionality at smaller scales.
- Tip: Research into piezoelectric ceramics continues to expand applications in sensors and actuators, driving technological advancements.

The Application of Advanced Ceramics in Aerospace Engineering

- Heat Resistance: Ceramic tiles and components are used in spacecraft to withstand intense heat during reentry into Earth's atmosphere.
- Durability: Ceramic matrix composites (CMCs) provide lightweight, durable alternatives to metals in jet engines and turbines.
- Environmental Impact: Their heat resistance improves fuel efficiency, reducing emissions in aerospace applications.
- Tip: Engineers are exploring ceramics to create lighter, more sustainable aerospace designs for future missions.

Ceramics in the Automotive Industry

- Catalytic Converters: Ceramics are the backbone of catalytic converters, aiding in reducing harmful emissions from vehicles.
- Brake Systems: Advanced ceramics are used in brake pads and rotors, offering high durability and performance under stress.
- Thermal Management: Ceramic coatings protect engine components from extreme temperatures, enhancing longevity and efficiency.
- Tip: Innovations in ceramics may revolutionize electric vehicle components, including battery technology and thermal insulation.

The Growing Importance of Ceramics in Renewable Energy Technologies

- Solar Panels: Ceramic materials like silicon dioxide are crucial for photovoltaic cells, improving energy conversion rates.
- Fuel Cells: Solid oxide fuel cells (SOFCs) use ceramic electrolytes to generate electricity efficiently and cleanly.
- Wind Turbines: Ceramic composites strengthen turbine blades, allowing them to withstand harsh environmental conditions.
- Tip: Researchers are developing ceramic-based materials for energy storage solutions, driving progress in renewable energy systems.

This page titled [15.1: Ceramics in Modern Technology and Industry](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

15.2: Sustainable and Eco-Friendly Ceramic Practices

Techniques for Recycling Ceramic Materials and Reducing Waste in the Studio

- Reclaiming Clay: Studio scraps can be rehydrated, wedged, and reused, reducing material waste and costs.
- Crushed Ceramics: Broken or unfired pieces can be crushed and used as grog in new clay bodies, improving strength and texture.
- Zero Waste: Adopting a closed-loop system ensures all materials are repurposed within the studio.
- Tip: Collaborate with other studios or industries to recycle larger quantities of ceramic waste sustainably.

Energy-Efficient Firing Practices, Including Alternative and Renewable Energy Sources

- Low-Fire Techniques: Lower firing temperatures save energy while offering vibrant glaze options and creative versatility.
- Solar-Powered Kilns: Emerging technology integrates solar panels to power electric kilns, reducing reliance on fossil fuels.
- Kiln Optimization: Regular maintenance, kiln stacking efficiency, and using programmable controllers minimize energy consumption.
- Tip: Explore community kilns or shared firing schedules to optimize energy use across multiple artists.

Development and Use of Eco-Friendly Glazes

- Non-Toxic Formulations: Replace hazardous materials like lead and barium with safer alternatives for food-safe glazes.
- Local Materials: Source natural materials like wood ash or locally mined feldspars to reduce the carbon footprint of glaze production.
- Testing: Experiment with recycled glaze materials, such as ground ceramic waste, for unique effects and eco-conscious designs.
- Tip: Share sustainable glaze recipes within ceramic communities to encourage widespread adoption of eco-friendly practices.

Case Studies of Ceramic Studios and Initiatives Leading the Way in Sustainability

- Examples: Studios like the Green Kiln Project advocate for carbon-neutral ceramic production through innovative firing methods.
- Community Impact: Initiatives like Clay for Change educate ceramicists on eco-conscious practices and provide resources for sustainable production.
- Collaborations: Partnerships with environmental organizations amplify the role of ceramics in ecological stewardship.
- Tip: Document and share your studio's sustainability efforts to inspire others and contribute to a global shift in ceramic practices.

This page titled [15.2: Sustainable and Eco-Friendly Ceramic Practices](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

15.3: Troubleshooting

Ceramics in Modern Technology and Industry

- Problem: Ceramic Components Brittle and Prone to Cracking
- Solution: Combine ceramics with polymers or metals to create composites that improve flexibility and durability.
- Problem: High Production Costs
- Solution: Optimize manufacturing processes, such as using additive manufacturing (3D printing) for precision and cost reduction.

Sustainable and Eco-Friendly Ceramic Practices

- Problem: Reclaiming Clay Results in Poor Quality
- Solution: Age reclaimed clay for consistency and incorporate grog for added plasticity and strength.
- Problem: Glaze Waste Management
- Solution: Implement a glaze reclamation system to combine leftover glazes into test batches, reducing waste while fostering creativity.

This page titled [15.3: Troubleshooting](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

16: Beyond the Studio

- 16.1: Ceramics in Education- Teaching and Workshops
- 16.2: Ceramics in the Digital Age- Online Communities and Resources
- 16.3: Sustainability in Ceramics- Practices and Considerations
- 16.4: The Future of Ceramics- Trends and Innovations
- 16.5: Challenges

This page titled [16: Beyond the Studio](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

16.1: Ceramics in Education- Teaching and Workshops

The value of ceramics in educational settings, from primary schools to universities.

- Designing effective ceramics curricula that foster technical skills and creative thinking.
- Best practices for conducting workshops that engage and inspire participants of all ages.
- Opportunities and challenges in online ceramics education and virtual workshops.

Example Assessment for Projects

Ceramics Assessment Form

Student Information

- Name: _____
- Date: _____
- Class/Section: _____

Project Details

- Project Title: _____
- Description: Provide a brief description of your ceramic project.
- _____
- _____
- _____

Technical Skills

1. Forming Techniques:

- Describe the forming techniques you used (e.g., wheel throwing, hand-building, slip casting).
- _____
- _____
- _____
- Explain why you chose these techniques for your project.
- _____
- _____
- _____

2. Surface Treatment:

- What surface treatments did you apply (e.g., glazing, underglazing, carving, sgraffito)?
- _____
- _____
- _____
- Describe the process and any challenges you encountered.
- _____
- _____
- _____

3. Firing Process:

- Detail the type of kiln and firing process used (e.g., oxidation, reduction, raku).

- Explain any adjustments or specific conditions you monitored during firing.

Artistic Elements

4. Design and Aesthetics:

- Discuss the design principles you applied (e.g., balance, contrast, harmony).

- How do these principles enhance the overall aesthetic of your piece?

5. Concept and Creativity:

- What was the inspiration behind your project?

- How did you incorporate creativity and originality into your work?

Critical Reflection

6. Technical Execution:

- Evaluate the technical execution of your project. What worked well, and what could be improved?

7. Problem-Solving:

- Describe any problems you encountered during the creation of your piece and how you resolved them.

- _____
- _____

8. Learning Outcomes:

- Reflect on what you learned through this project. How has it contributed to your skills and understanding of ceramics?

- _____
- _____
- _____

Peer and Instructor Feedback

9. Feedback from Peers:

- Summarize the feedback you received from your peers.

- _____
- _____
- _____

10. Instructor's Comments:

- Provide any additional comments or feedback from your instructor.

- _____
- _____
- _____

Final Thoughts

11. Overall Experience:

- Reflect on your overall experience with this project. What did you enjoy most, and what were your main takeaways?

- _____
- _____
- _____

15.2 Ceramics in the Digital Age: Online Communities and Resources

- The explosion of digital resources for ceramic artists, including tutorials, forums, and online galleries.
- Leveraging social media platforms to showcase work, connect with peers, and engage with the broader ceramics community.
- Digital tools and software that assist in the design and production of ceramic works.
- The impact of online marketplaces on selling and distributing ceramic art.

This page titled [16.1: Ceramics in Education- Teaching and Workshops](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

16.2: Ceramics in the Digital Age- Online Communities and Resources

This page titled [16.2: Ceramics in the Digital Age- Online Communities and Resources](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

16.3: Sustainability in Ceramics- Practices and Considerations

This page titled [16.3: Sustainability in Ceramics- Practices and Considerations](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

16.4: The Future of Ceramics- Trends and Innovations

This page titled [16.4: The Future of Ceramics- Trends and Innovations](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

16.5: Challenges

This page titled [16.5: Challenges](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

17: The Craft and Regional Ceramics Movements After 1920

17.1: The Evolution of the Craft Movement

17.2: Regional Ceramics Movements

17.3: Brutalism and Ceramics

17.3.1: Introduction to Contemporary Ceramics

17.3.2: Legacy and Influence

17.3.2.1: Influence on Ceramics and the Art World

17.3.3: Mingei Movement and Its Principles

17.3.3.1: Influence on Western Ceramics

17.3.3.2: Legacy and Influence

17.4: Women in Contemporary Ceramics

17.4.1: Impact on Women Artists and the Ceramics Field

This page titled [17: The Craft and Regional Ceramics Movements After 1920](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

17.1: The Evolution of the Craft Movement

Introduction: Context for Ceramic Evolution

While the craft movement grew from a desire to uphold handmaking traditions, ceramics specifically underwent a complex evolution through the 20th century, navigating tensions between craft, sculpture, and fine art. Its placement within major art movements was shaped by critical theories, powerful patrons, and shifting regional art scenes across the U.S.

The Roots of the American Craft Movement

The American Arts and Crafts Movement of the late 19th and early 20th centuries grew from a reaction against industrialization and mass production. Inspired by the British Arts and Crafts ideals of John Ruskin and William Morris, American artists, designers, and architects sought to revive hand craftsmanship and imbue daily life with beauty, function, and authenticity. Figures such as Gustav Stickley and the Roycroft community emphasized honesty of materials, simplicity of form, and the dignity of labor. The movement was closely intertwined with broader social reform efforts, including the Progressive Era's push toward better working conditions and community building.

Black Mountain College and Craft Education

Black Mountain College, founded in 1933 in North Carolina, became a vital incubator for avant-garde ideas in art, craft, and education. Influenced by Bauhaus pedagogy, the college emphasized experiential learning and interdisciplinary collaboration. Potters like Karen Karnes, Marguerite Wildenhain, and Peter Voulkos either studied or taught there, shaping the modern American studio craft movement. Craft at Black Mountain was not relegated to a lower status than fine art—it was integrated into the broader pursuit of creativity, philosophy, and social change, thereby legitimizing ceramics, weaving, and other crafts as serious academic and artistic practices.

Gender Dynamics in the Arts and Craft Movements

Craft fields such as ceramics, textiles, and book arts have historically been feminized and marginalized compared to "high" fine arts like painting and sculpture. Women often dominated craft education and production but faced institutional barriers to recognition. In the early 20th century, arts-and-crafts education became one of the few areas where women could work professionally in the arts. Figures like Maria Martinez, Marguerite Wildenhain, and later Betty Woodman challenged gender hierarchies within the art world. By the late 20th century, feminist art movements actively reclaimed craft as a site of critical resistance, arguing that the supposed 'inferiority' of craft was rooted in sexist cultural assumptions rather than aesthetic merit.

Government, War, and Politics: External Forces Shaping the Craft Movement

Wider historical events critically shaped the craft movement's evolution. The Works Progress Administration (WPA) during the Great Depression supported craft production through Federal Art Projects, funding artisans and community workshops. After World War II, the GI Bill enabled a new generation of veterans—many exposed to Japanese and European craft traditions abroad—to attend universities, fueling a ceramics boom in the United States. Cold War anxieties about American identity also fueled government support for craft as a symbol of democratic individualism, contrasting with mass-produced "communist" aesthetics. In this climate, crafts were positioned as a quintessentially American, humanistic form of artistic expression.

Ceramics and Critical Theory: Greenberg, Judd, and the Art-Craft Divide

Clement Greenberg, a dominant mid-20th century critic, reinforced the fine art hierarchy that relegated craft—including ceramics—to a secondary status. His emphasis on purity of medium (favoring abstract painting and sculpture) marginalized materially-based arts. Donald Judd, though primarily associated with Minimalism, challenged Greenberg's biases by advocating for "specific objects" that blurred traditional categories. Judd praised certain ceramics for their material honesty and sculptural integrity, opening theoretical space for clay as an equal to other fine art materials. However, most of mainstream critical discourse still struggled to fully legitimize ceramics until much later.

Patrons, Modernists, and Ceramics

Collectors and patrons such as Peggy Guggenheim and Gertrude Stein were instrumental in advancing avant-garde art, yet their collections largely omitted ceramics, reflecting broader biases. Meanwhile, artists themselves blurred boundaries: Pablo Picasso incorporated clay into his postwar explorations at Madoura Pottery, radically reimagining the vessel as canvas. Georgia O'Keeffe's forays into ceramics paralleled her painting interests, further bridging abstraction and natural form. Alfred Stieglitz's championing of modernism through his gallery 291, while primarily focused on photography and painting, fostered a broader conversation about materials and mediums that would later help frame ceramic work in more serious artistic terms.

Regional Shifts in American Ceramics

The geography of American ceramics evolved dramatically throughout the 20th century:

- **West Coast:** California became a hotbed for experimental ceramics after World War II, especially through figures like Peter Voulkos at Otis College. Here, ceramics shed functional expectations in favor of expressionistic sculpture.
- **New York:** Although dominated by Abstract Expressionism and Conceptual Art, New York's craft communities quietly flourished. Later, ceramic artists like Toshiko Takaezu and Betty Woodman integrated painterly abstraction into clay, gaining traction in New York's galleries.
- **North Carolina:** Anchored by the legacy of Black Mountain College and Seagrove's traditional pottery, North Carolina cultivated a deep respect for both functional and avant-garde ceramics, blending modernist ideals with regional craft traditions.
- **Midwest:** Minnesota and Ohio, influenced by figures like Warren MacKenzie, preserved and elevated functional ceramics aligned with the Mingei movement. Academic programs and community studios helped ceramics become embedded in the cultural fabric of the region.

The Resurgence of the Craft Movement in the 20th and 21st Centuries

By the mid-20th century, a distinct studio craft movement had taken hold, led by artists like Peter Voulkos, Sam Maloof, and Lenore Tawney. The 1960s and 70s witnessed a radical shift: craftspeople increasingly saw their work as personal, political, and experimental rather than purely functional. The 21st century has brought further revitalization through a DIY culture, a renewed interest in sustainability, and technological innovations like digital fabrication tools. Organizations like the American Craft Council and exhibitions like the Smithsonian Craft Show continue to highlight the evolving relevance of craft in contemporary culture.

The Relationship Between Craft and Fine Art

Historically, craft was segregated from fine art based on perceived utility and skill hierarchies. However, this boundary has eroded steadily since the post-war period. Ceramists like Robert Arneson and Grayson Perry intentionally blurred the line between fine art and functional object. Museums such as the Museum of Arts and Design (NYC) and the Renwick Gallery (Smithsonian) have championed craft-based works. In contemporary practice, ceramic artists often address conceptual themes traditionally associated with painting and sculpture, further dissolving historical divisions between mediums.

Case Studies: Craft's Impact on Contemporary Ceramic Practices

- **Theaster Gates** – Uses ceramics, urban redevelopment, and performance art to challenge social inequality and reclaim material history.
- **Arlene Shechet** – Transforms ceramic forms into abstract sculptures that explore transformation, fragility, and intuition.
- **Adam Silverman** – Integrates architecture, ceramics, and nature, often using site-specific clay to create experimental vessels.

This page titled [17.1: The Evolution of the Craft Movement](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

17.2: Regional Ceramics Movements

This page titled [17.2: Regional Ceramics Movements](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

SECTION OVERVIEW

17.3: Brutalism and Ceramics

17.3.1: Introduction to Contemporary Ceramics

17.3.2: Legacy and Influence

17.3.2.1: Influence on Ceramics and the Art World

17.3.3: Mingei Movement and Its Principles

17.3.3.1: Influence on Western Ceramics

17.3.3.2: Legacy and Influence

This page titled [17.3: Brutalism and Ceramics](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

17.3.1: Introduction to Contemporary Ceramics

This page titled [17.3.1: Introduction to Contemporary Ceramics](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

17.3.2: Legacy and Influence

This page titled [17.3.2: Legacy and Influence](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

17.3.2.1: Influence on Ceramics and the Art World

This page titled [17.3.2.1: Influence on Ceramics and the Art World](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

17.3.3: Mingei Movement and Its Principles

This page titled [17.3.3: Mingei Movement and Its Principles](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

17.3.3.1: Influence on Western Ceramics

This page titled [17.3.3.1: Influence on Western Ceramics](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

17.3.3.2: Legacy and Influence

This page titled [17.3.3.2: Legacy and Influence](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

SECTION OVERVIEW

17.4: Women in Contemporary Ceramics

17.4.1: Impact on Women Artists and the Ceramics Field

This page titled [17.4: Women in Contemporary Ceramics](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

17.4.1: Impact on Women Artists and the Ceramics Field

This page titled [17.4.1: Impact on Women Artists and the Ceramics Field](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

18: Artists and Craftspeople

- 18.1: Online Platforms
- 18.2: Adam Field
- 18.3: Kate Malone
- 18.4: Ayumi Horie
- 18.5: The Haas Brothers (Simon and Nikolai Haas)
- 18.6: Ben Carter
- 18.7: Julia Galloway
- 18.8: Jessica Putnam-Phillips
- 18.9: Grayson Perry
- 18.10: Roberto Lugo
- 18.11: Chris Staley
- 18.12: Molly Hatch
- 18.13: Chris Casey
- 18.14: Forrest Lesch-Middelton
- 18.15: Lindsay Oesterritter
- 18.16: Tim See
- 18.17: Sean O'Connell
- 18.18: Lauren Sandler
- 18.19: Naomi Clement
- 18.20: Jen Allen

This page titled [18: Artists and Craftspeople](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.1: Online Platforms

This page titled [18.1: Online Platforms](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.2: Adam Field

Adam Field

Known for his detailed, hand-carved porcelain vessels, Adam Field combines traditional techniques with contemporary design. He shares his process, inspiration, and glimpses of his life as a ceramic artist on social media, engaging with a broad audience through workshops and demonstrations.



Videos

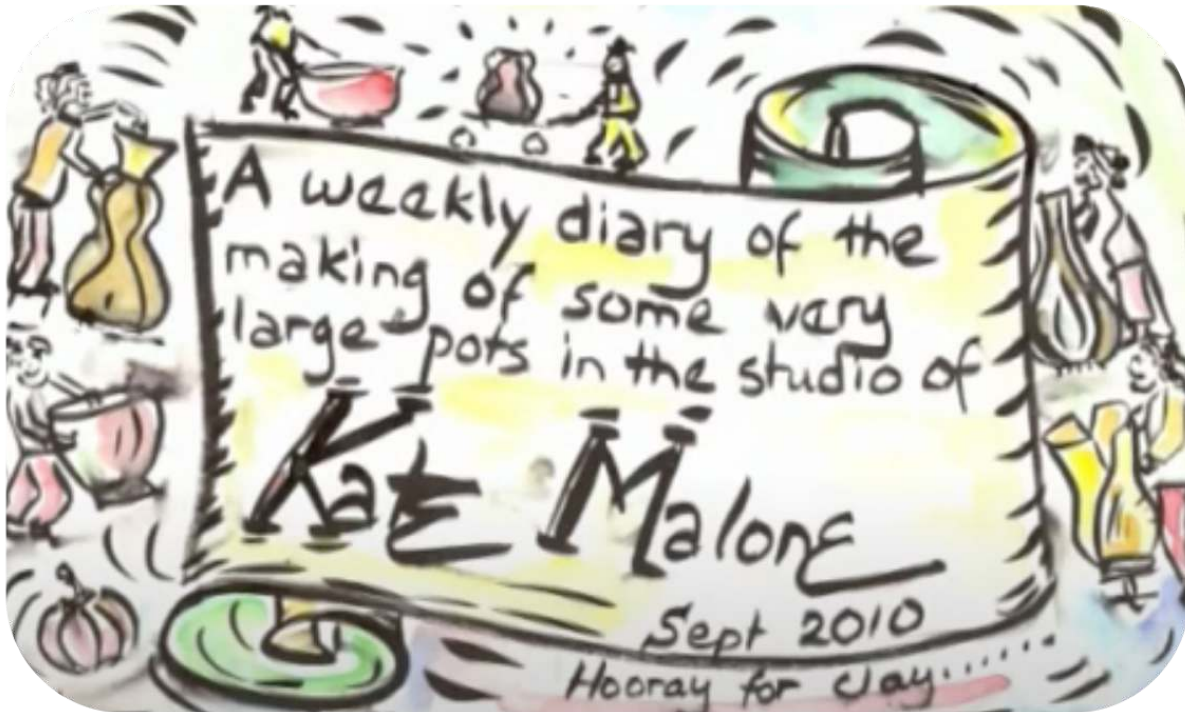
- [Adam Field Carving Porcelain Jar on Great Pottery Throwdown Canada Season I](#)
- [Adam Field Throwing/Building Onggi Jar](#)

This page titled [18.2: Adam Field](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.3: Kate Malone

Kate Malone

Kate Malone is a British ceramic artist celebrated for her vibrantly glazed pottery and sculptures. Her work, deeply inspired by nature, is shared through her social media channels, where she also highlights her creative process and the science behind her glazes.



Videos (Part 1-8)

1. [Kate Malone Video Diary Week 1](#)
2. [Kate Malone Video Diary Week 2](#)
3. [Kate Malone Video Diary Week 3](#)
4. [Kate Malone Video Diary Week 4](#)
5. [Kate Malone Video Diary Week 5](#)
6. [Kate Malone Video Diary Week 6](#)
7. [Kate Malone Video Diary Week 7](#)
8. [Kate Malone Video Diary Week 8](#)

This page titled [18.3: Kate Malone](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.4: Ayumi Horie

Ayumi Horie

Ayumi Horie is a Japanese-American potter recognized for her playful, narrative pottery and innovative digital projects. She co-founded the "Pots In Action" (PIA) Instagram project, which showcases diverse pottery forms and uses from various cultures and historical periods, curated by a global community of potters.



Videos

- [Ayumi Horie Craft in America Interview](#)
- [Ayumi Horie Craft in America - Dry Throwing](#)

This page titled [18.4: Ayumi Horie](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.5: The Haas Brothers (Simon and Nikolai Haas)

The Haas Brothers (Simon and Nikolai Haas)

The Haas Brothers, known for their whimsical and sometimes surreal ceramic creations, blend art, design, and craft in their work. They utilize social media to share their unique pieces, which often push the boundaries of traditional ceramics.

This page titled [18.5: The Haas Brothers \(Simon and Nikolai Haas\)](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.6: Ben Carter

Ben Carter

Ben Carter, a ceramic artist and educator, is the creator of the "Tales of a Red Clay Rambler" podcast. Through his podcast and social media presence, he explores the ceramics community, interviewing artists and discussing topics related to ceramic art, culture, and education.

Podcast: <https://www.talesofaredclayrambler.com/episodes>

Videos

- [Ben Carter - Ceramic Arts Network "Troubleshooting Trimming"](#)



- [Ben Carter - Ceramic Arts Network "Platter Highlights"](#)



This page titled [18.6: Ben Carter](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.7: Julia Galloway

Julia Galloway

A utilitarian potter with a deep commitment to craftsmanship and community, Julia Galloway's work is both beautiful and functional. Through her social media channels, she shares her artistic process, workshops, and her "[Field Guide for Ceramic Artisans](#)," a resource for emerging artists.

This page titled [18.7: Julia Galloway](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.8: Jessica Putnam-Phillips

Jessica Putnam-Phillips

Jessica Putnam-Phillips, founder of ClayShare, an online ceramic learning platform, utilizes social media to provide accessible, high-quality ceramic education. Her work, often narrative-driven and featuring intricate surface designs, bridges her interests in ceramics, feminism, and military service.

This page titled [18.8: Jessica Putnam-Phillips](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.9: Grayson Perry

Grayson Perry

Grayson Perry is a British contemporary artist known for his ceramic vases, tapestries, and cross-dressing persona. His work often explores complex themes such as identity, gender, class, and society through a combination of traditional craft and provocative subject matter. Perry engages with audiences through exhibitions, books, television programs, and social media, making contemporary art accessible to a wide audience.

Videos and Resources

- [Grayson Perry: Who Are You? \(TV Series\)](#)
- [Grayson Perry: Rites of Passage \(TV Series\)](#)
- [Grayson Perry on Identity and Art \(Interview\)](#)

Selected Works

- *The Vanity of Small Differences* (Tapestry Series)
- *Map of Nowhere* (Print)
- *The Walthamstow Tapestry*

This page titled [18.9: Grayson Perry](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.10: Roberto Lugo

Roberto Lugo

Roberto Lugo is an American ceramicist, social activist, poet, and educator known for blending traditional pottery forms with contemporary social commentary. His work often features portraits of historical and contemporary figures from marginalized communities, exploring issues of race, poverty, and social justice through the lens of ceramic art. Lugo actively uses social media to share his creative process, community projects, and advocacy for greater diversity and equity in the arts.

Learn More

- [Official Website](#)
- [Roberto Lugo on Instagram](#)
- [Roberto Lugo - The Ghetto Potter \(YouTube Interview\)](#)
- [Craft in America: Roberto Lugo](#)

This page titled [18.10: Roberto Lugo](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.11: Chris Staley

Chris Staley

Chris Staley is a renowned American ceramic artist and educator whose work explores the connections between form, surface, and human experience. Known for his expressive vessels and sculptures, he shares insights into his creative process, philosophy, and teaching practices through social media, public lectures, and online educational resources.

Videos and Resources

- [Clay and Conversations with Chris Staley](#)
- [Liking Mistakes - Chris Staley, Penn State Laureate 2012-13](#)
- [How Do You Grade Art? - Chris Staley, Penn State Laureate 2012-13](#)
- [Magic Clay - Chris Staley, Penn State Laureate 2012-13](#)
- [The Dirt on Teaching & Learning by Chris Staley](#)
- [Sculpting the World](#)

Online Presence

- [Interview with Chris Staley on CFile](#)
- [Cups, Stories and Empathy Workshop at Anderson Ranch Arts Center](#)

This page titled [18.11: Chris Staley](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.12: Molly Hatch

Molly Hatch

Molly Hatch is an American ceramic artist, designer, and author known for her contemporary approach to traditional ceramic forms and patterns. Her work spans functional pottery, large-scale installations, and collaborations with major brands. Through social media, exhibitions, and publications, Hatch shares her creative process, bridging fine art, craft, and design.

Videos and Resources

- [Molly Hatch: A Life in Pattern](#)
- [Molly Hatch Interview - Design Milk](#)

Online Presence

- [Molly Hatch Official Website](#)
- [Molly Hatch on Instagram](#)

This page titled [18.12: Molly Hatch](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.13: Chris Casey

This page titled [18.13: Chris Casey](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.14: Forrest Lesch-Middelton

Forrest Lesch-Middelton & FLM Ceramics

Forrest Lesch-Middelton is a renowned ceramic artist, tile maker, and educator based in Petaluma, California. He is the founder of FLM Ceramics, a studio known for its intricate patterns and innovative techniques in pottery and tile making. Forrest's work often explores historical and cultural narratives, blending traditional motifs with contemporary forms.

About Forrest Lesch-Middelton

- [FLM Ceramics - About Forrest](#)
- [Flower City Arts Center - Artist Bio](#)
- [Ceramic Arts Network - Author Profile](#)

FLM Ceramics

- [Official Website](#)
- [Shop Pottery](#)
- [Shop Tile](#)
- [Handmade Tile - Book by Forrest Lesch-Middelton](#)

Social Media

- [Instagram: @flmceramics](#)
- [Facebook: Forrest Lesch-Middelton Ceramics](#)

Videos and Media

- [Volumetric Image Transfer with Forrest Lesch-Middelton](#)

This page titled [18.14: Forrest Lesch-Middelton](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.15: Lindsay Oesterritter

Lindsay Oesterritter

Lindsay Oesterritter is a celebrated ceramic artist, educator, and wood-firing specialist. Her work emphasizes natural surfaces, atmospheric firing, and traditional techniques, with a strong commitment to the ceramic community through teaching, workshops, and organizational leadership. She shares her process and insights into the art of wood-firing through social media and online learning platforms.

Videos and Resources

- [Introducing Lindsay Oesterritter, 2025 NCECA Conference Presenter](#)
- [Essential Elements | Lindsay Oesterritter | Wood Fired Pottery](#)
- [Meet the Parents – Lindsay Oesterritter and Jason Vulcan](#)
- [Lindsay Oesterritter on Thinking with Your Hands](#)

Online Presence

- [In the Studio: Maker Q&A: Lindsay Oesterritter](#)
- [body](#)

This page titled [18.15: Lindsay Oesterritter](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.16: Tim See

Tim See

Tim See is a ceramic artist based in Syracuse, New York, known for his industrial-inspired functional pottery and dedication to ceramic education. His work often features steampunk aesthetics, combining traditional forms with mechanical and illustrative elements.

Biography

Born in 1979, Tim See began his journey in ceramics at Onondaga Community College and earned his BFA in Ceramics with Honors from Syracuse University in 2004. He has exhibited his work at prestigious venues such as the Smithsonian Museum in Washington, D.C., the Everson Museum in Syracuse, NY, and Baltimore Clayworks in Maryland. Since 2006, he has been teaching pottery at Clayscapes Pottery, Inc., and has conducted numerous workshops across the Northeast.

Online Presence

- [Official Website](#)
- [YouTube Channel](#)
- [Instagram Profile](#)
- [Facebook Page](#)

Selected Videos

- [Beginner Wheel Throwing Class](#)
- [Making the Best Mug in the World](#)
- [Throwing Tall Cylinders](#)
- [Throwing Bowls with Different Views](#)

Workshops and Teaching

Tim See offers workshops focusing on industrial forms and decoration techniques. For example, he conducted a weekend workshop in San Antonio, TX, covering throwing and assembling industrial forms, as well as decorating techniques using slip, underglaze, and glazes. He continues to teach at CI

This page titled [18.16: Tim See](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.17: Sean O'Connell

Sean O'Connell

Sean O'Connell is a studio potter and educator known for his functional ceramics that blend utility with intricate surface designs. His work often features vibrant patterns inspired by textiles, natural geometry, and historical ceramics. O'Connell's commitment to the handmade object reflects a deliberate attempt to slow down and connect with deeper aspects of daily life.

Videos and Demonstrations

- [Sean O'Connell 2016 Emerging Artist](#)
- [Ceramic Surface Design Techniques on a Plate](#)
- [Unifying Form & Surface with Sean O'Connell](#)
- [Making Dynamic Decorations with Underglaze and Wax Resist](#)

Online Presence

- [Sean O'Connell Official Website](#)
- [Instagram: @seanoconnell.pottery](#)
- [The Marks Project Profile](#)
- [Red Lodge Clay Center Profile](#)

This page titled [18.17: Sean O'Connell](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.18: Lauren Sandler

Lauren Sandler

Lauren Sandler is a Philadelphia-based ceramic artist and educator whose work explores the layered narratives embedded in material culture. Her sculptural vessels, often assembled from stacked parts and adorned with cultural artifacts, investigate themes of power, migration, labor, and commodification. Drawing from her background in anthropology and ceramics, Sandler utilizes the familiarity of ceramic forms to challenge the presumed neutrality of material culture and to unearth stories that have been erased or distorted.

Education and Teaching

- MFA in Ceramics, Pennsylvania State University
- BFA in Ceramics, SUNY New Paltz
- BA in Anthropology, Ithaca College
- Associate Professor and Program Head of Ceramics at Tyler School of Art and Architecture, Temple University

Artist Statement

"My work examines the myriad chronicles told by objects, a shared intersection of body, culture, and history. I look to artifacts as a means of dismantling and reconstructing; a mutable archive of cultural evidence as histories entwine with present moments. Through fragmented forms, allegoric containers, and quotidian tableau, I explore stories erased, distorted, and rewritten. I utilize the vessel as an assemblage of parts, an accumulation of material culture to offer multiple perspectives. The work becomes a site to examine economies of power, migration and occupation, labor and commodification. Through this process, disparate systems, forces, and ideologies converge as layered narratives combine in one form." – Lauren Sandler

Videos and Interviews

- [Constructing Narrative Vessels – Online Workshop](#)
- [Podcast Interview: Unseen Narratives of Material Culture](#)
- [Clay at Home: Artist Talk with Lauren Sandler](#)

Online Presence

- [Official Website](#)
- [Instagram: @laurensandlerstudio](#)

This page titled [18.18: Lauren Sandler](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.19: Naomi Clement

Naomi Clement

Naomi Clement is a Canadian ceramic artist and educator based in Stratford, Ontario. Her work explores themes of home and belonging through functional ceramics, often incorporating text elements from family correspondence to bridge past and present. Naomi has participated in residencies, given lectures and workshops, and exhibited her work across North America. She received her MFA from Louisiana State University in 2017 and her BFA from the Nova Scotia College of Art & Design University in 2003. Naomi was named a 2017 Emerging Artist by Ceramics Monthly magazine and served as a board member for the National Council on Education for the Ceramic Arts (NCECA).

Videos

- [Naomi Clement: A Canadian potter, a teacher and a mentor for artists to earn a living at art](#)
- [Working with Underglazes — the good and the bad!](#)
- [Naomi Clement, clear glaze recipe](#)

Online Presence

- [Official Website](#)
- [Instagram](#)
- [Facebook](#)

This page titled [18.19: Naomi Clement](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

18.20: Jen Allen

Jen Allen

Jen Allen is a studio potter and educator based in Morgantown, West Virginia. She earned her BFA in Ceramics from the University of Alaska Anchorage in 2002 and an MFA from Indiana University in 2006. Jen's work is known for its functional elegance, often featuring intricate surface designs inspired by textiles and nature. She employs techniques such as darting and slab construction, reflecting her background in sewing and her appreciation for the tactile qualities of clay. In addition to her studio practice, Jen teaches ceramics at West Virginia University and conducts workshops across the country.

Videos and Resources

- [Pandemic-Proof Artist Series | Jennifer Allen, Potter](#)
- [Live Webinar: Get a Grasp on Pottery Handles with Jen Allen](#)
- [Darted & Decorated with Jennifer Allen](#)
- [Fundamentals of Wheel Throwing with Jennifer Allen](#)

Online Presence

- [Official Website](#)
- [Instagram: @jenallenceramics](#)

This page titled [18.20: Jen Allen](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

CHAPTER OVERVIEW

19: Curators, Critics, and Collectors Impact

[19.1: Access and Representation](#)

[19.2: Garth Clark](#)

[19.3: Mark Delvecchio](#)

[19.4: Peter Held](#)

[19.5: Garth Johnson](#)

[19.6: Ulysses Grant Dietz](#)

[19.7: Nevica Project](#)

[19.8: Leslie Ferrin Gallery](#)

[19.9: Clay AKAR](#)

[19.10: Influence on the Ceramics and Art World](#)

[19.11: Jerry Saltz](#)

[19.12: Roberta Smith](#)

This page titled [19: Curators, Critics, and Collectors Impact](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

19.1: Access and Representation

This page titled [19.1: Access and Representation](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

19.2: Garth Clark

Garth Clark

Garth Clark (b. 1947, Pretoria, South Africa) is a renowned art critic, historian, curator, and gallerist, celebrated for his influential role in elevating ceramics within the contemporary art discourse. A graduate of the Royal College of Art in London (1976), Clark has authored over 70 books and 300 essays, reviews, and monographs, significantly shaping the understanding and appreciation of ceramic art.

Career Highlights

- **Garth Clark Gallery:** Co-founded in 1981 with Mark Del Vecchio, the gallery had locations in Los Angeles, New York, Kansas City, and briefly London, presenting over 500 exhibitions and promoting artists like Akio Takamori, Ron Nagle, and Beth Cavenier.
- **Ceramic Arts Foundation:** Established in 1979, Clark directed this organization until 2005, fostering critical discourse and scholarship in ceramic arts.
- **CFile Foundation:** As Editor-in-Chief, Clark leads this global online campus dedicated to contemporary ceramics in art, design, architecture, and technology.

Notable Publications

- *Shards: Garth Clark on Ceramic Art* (2003)
- *The Mad Potter of Biloxi: The Art and Life of George E. Ohr* (1989)
- *American Ceramics: 1876 to the Present* (1987)
- *The Artful Teapot* (2001)
- *How Envy Killed the Crafts Movement: An Autopsy in Two Parts* (2008)
- *Mind Mud: The Conceptual Ceramics of Ai Weiwei* (forthcoming)

Selected Quotes

“Ceramics’ great clarifier.” – Irving Blum, contemporary art dealer

“His writings have shaped thought about the field of ceramics and indeed the field itself.”
– College Art Association’s Mather Award jury

Multimedia Resources

- [Garth Clark Interview – Craft in America](#)
- [Beatrice Wood: An Interview with Garth Clark and Mark Del Vecchio](#)
- [Mind Mud: Ai Weiwei Ceramics – Garth Clark Lecture](#)
- [Heath Ceramics and American Pottery – Garth Clark](#)

Further Reading and Resources

- [Garth Clark – Wikipedia](#)
- [Garth Clark – CFile Foundation](#)
- [Oral History Interview with Garth Clark – Archives of American Art](#)
- [Garth Clark – Amazon Author Page](#)

This page titled [19.2: Garth Clark](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

19.3: Mark Delvecchio

Mark Del Vecchio

Mark Del Vecchio is a prominent American art critic, curator, and historian specializing in modern and contemporary ceramics. He co-founded the Garth Clark Gallery, which operated from 1981 to 2008, presenting over 500 exhibitions across locations in Los Angeles, New York, Kansas City, and London. Del Vecchio has been instrumental in elevating ceramics from craft to fine art, advocating for postmodern and conceptual approaches in the medium.

Notable Works

- **Postmodern Ceramics** (2001) – A comprehensive survey of ceramic art since the 1980s, discussing over 130 artists from more than 25 countries. [Available at SFPL](#)
- **Dark Light: The Ceramics of Christine Nofchissey McHorse** (2012) – Co-authored with Garth Clark, this book explores the innovative blackware sculptures of Navajo artist Christine McHorse. [Published by Fresco Books](#)
- **Shifting Paradigms in Contemporary Ceramics** – An exhibition and accompanying catalogue at the Museum of Fine Arts, Houston, showcasing the Garth Clark and Mark Del Vecchio Collection. [MFAH Exhibition](#)

Selected Interviews and Media

- [Interview with Garth Clark and Mark Del Vecchio on Beatrice Wood](#)

Quotes

"We had no master plan, at first it seemed that we should just handle the blue-chip figures in the field but there was no challenge in that. So instead of the modernists we took on the postmodernists who were more of our own generation, largely unknown, and set about giving them a higher profile."

— Mark Del Vecchio, as quoted in [CFile](#)

External Links

- [Ceramics Now: Shifting Paradigms Exhibition](#)
- [Glasstire Review of the MFAH Collection](#)

This page titled [19.3: Mark Delvecchio](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

19.4: Peter Held

Peter Held

Peter Held is a distinguished American art curator, historian, and appraiser, renowned for his contributions to contemporary ceramics and craft-based media. With a career spanning over three decades, Held has organized more than 200 exhibitions, including seven national traveling shows. He has authored numerous articles and served as editor and essayist for ten books on contemporary art and craft.

Education and Career

- **Education:** Bachelor of Science in Studio Art from SUNY Brockport; Master's degree in Museum Studies from Oregon State University; Certificate in Appraisal Studies from SUNY Purchase in partnership with the American Society of Appraisers (ASA).
- **Career Highlights:**
 - Resident artist at the Archie Bray Foundation for the Ceramic Arts (1974–1976).
 - Executive Director and Curator of the Holter Museum of Art, where he led a successful \$2.3 million capital and endowment campaign.
 - Curator of Ceramics at the ASU Art Museum's Ceramics Research Center, significantly expanding the collection and organizing numerous influential exhibitions.

Notable Exhibitions

- *Between Clouds of Memory: Akio Takamori, A Mid-Career Survey* (2005)
- *Following the Rhythms of Life: The Ceramic Art of David Shaner* (2007)
- *Eden Revisited: The Ceramic Art of Kurt Weiser* (2009)
- *Wanxin Zhang: A Ten Year Survey* (2010)
- *A Chosen Path: The Ceramic Art of Karen Karnes* (2011)
- *Infinite Place: The Ceramic Art of Wayne Higby* (2013)

Selected Publications

- *The Art of Toshiko Takaezu: In the Language of Silence* – Editor and essayist
- *Crafting a Continuum: Rethinking Contemporary Craft* – Co-curator and contributor

Awards and Honors

- Ceramic Lifetime Achievement Award from the Friends of Contemporary Ceramics (2007)
- Smithsonian's James Renwick Alliance Distinguished Educator Award (2014)
- National Council for Education on the Ceramic Arts Honorary Member Award (2014)

Direct Quotes

"My tenure at Arizona State University these last 11 years has been truly astonishing. Working with engaged colleagues and faculty members, energized students, talented artists, writers and researchers, and generous collectors and patrons has given me a solid platform to carry out my work. Every day there was something new to learn, and that never diminished for me over the years."

— Peter Held, reflecting on his time at ASU Art Museum

Online Resources

- [Peter Held Appraisals – About](#)
- [Peter Held on Goodreads](#)
- [ASU News: Peter Held to Retire After 11 Years as ASU Art Museum Curator of Ceramics](#)
- [Interview: Sarah Kelly and Peter Held](#)

This page titled [19.4: Peter Held](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

19.5: Garth Johnson

Garth Johnson

Garth Johnson is a writer, curator, educator, and self-described “craft activist” who explores the role of craft in the 21st century. He currently serves as the Paul Phillips and Sharon Sullivan Curator of Ceramics at the Everson Museum of Art in Syracuse, New York. Previously, he was the Curator of Ceramics at the Arizona State University Art Museum Ceramics Research Center and served as Artistic Director at The Clay Studio in Philadelphia.

Notable Works and Projects

- **Extreme Craft** – A blog and platform dedicated to unconventional craft practices, described as “a compendium of art masquerading as craft, craft masquerading as art, and craft extending its middle finger.”
- **1000 Ideas for Creative Reuse** – A book showcasing innovative ways to repurpose materials, reflecting Johnson's interest in sustainability and DIY culture.
- **Manifest Destiny Series** – A series of altered Currier & Ives collector plates that explore themes of westward expansion and American entitlement.
- **Exhibitions at the Everson Museum** – Curated exhibitions such as “Renegades & Reformers: American Art Pottery,” “Earth Piece: Conceptual and Performative Works in Clay,” and “Key Figures: Representational Ceramics 1932–1972.”

Selected Videos

- [Artaxis Conversations: Garth Johnson](#)
- [Garth Johnson Lecture at ASU Art Museum](#)
- [Celebrate Clay Series: Garth Johnson](#)
- [Adelaide Alsop Robineau – Garth Johnson](#)

Selected Quotes

“Craft has dogged me all my life. I love it, I hate it, I write about it because it seems totally alive to me. Craft hard!”

— Garth Johnson

“I believe that craft and making permeate our lives in ways that we don’t always realize.”

— Garth Johnson

Online Presence and Resources

- [Everson Museum of Art](#)
- [The Clay Studio – Garth Johnson](#)
- [Ferrin Contemporary – Garth Johnson](#)
- [LinkedIn – Garth Johnson](#)

This page titled [19.5: Garth Johnson](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

19.6: Ulysses Grant Dietz

Ulysses Grant Dietz

Ulysses Grant Dietz is an American art historian, curator, and author, renowned for his extensive work in the decorative arts. Serving as the curator of Decorative Arts at The Newark Museum from 1980 until 2017, and appointed Chief Curator in 2012, Dietz curated over 115 exhibitions covering various aspects of decorative arts, including furniture, silver, base metals, glass, ceramics, textiles, and jewelry. He is particularly noted for his work on the Museum's National Historic Landmark Ballantine House, built in 1885, which he reinterpreted between 1992 and 1994 with a groundbreaking installation called *House & Home*.

Notable Works

- **Masterpieces of Art Pottery, 1880-1930** (2009) – A comprehensive overview of art pottery from the Newark Museum's collection.
- **Dream House: The White House as an American Home** (2009) – An exploration of the White House's evolution as a residence.
- **Jewelry from Pearls to Platinum to Plastic** (2017) – A study of the Newark Museum's jewelry collection.
- **Growing Up Grant: A Gay Life in the Shadow of Ulysses S. Grant** – A memoir reflecting on his heritage and personal journey.

Interviews and Lectures

- [In the Shadow of the General](#) – Dietz discusses his family history and personal experiences.
- [Lecture: Ulysses Grant Dietz](#) – A talk on Chester Arthur and Louis Tiffany.
- [Virtual Lecture Series: Ulysses Grant Dietz](#) – Insights into the role of gemstones in society.

Direct Quotes

"What drives us here is we want to tell a story, and we want objects to tell that story really well."

— Ulysses Grant Dietz, [New Jersey Monthly](#)

"People think of us as a little museum, when in fact we're a big museum stuck in a little box."

— Ulysses Grant Dietz, [New Jersey Monthly](#)

Online Presence

- [Connecticut Ceramics Circle Profile](#)
- [Goodreads Author Page](#)
- [Society of Presidential Descendants](#)

This page titled [19.6: Ulysses Grant Dietz](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

19.7: Nevica Project

The Nevica Project

The Nevica Project LLC is a contemporary fine art business representing artwork from the primary and secondary markets. We provide complete art services for individuals and design professionals, including acquisitions, appraisals, collection documentation, advisory services, fine art photography, and art shipping.

Notable Artists Represented

- Ruth Duckworth
- Richard Serra
- Ken Price
- Peter Voulkos
- Chuck Close
- Tara Donovan
- Richard DeVore
- Ken Ferguson
- Michael Lucero
- Rudy Autio
- Peregrine Honig
- Beth Cavener
- Viola Frey
- Tom Turner
- Robert Turner
- Jack Troy
- Zach Tate
- Andy Shaw
- Tatsuzo Shimaoka
- Jeff Shapiro
- Ted Saupe
- Tim Rowan
- Justin Rothshank
- Brian Rochefort
- David Reagan
- Jeff Oestreich
- Richard Notkin
- Doug Casebeer
- Priscilla Mouritzen
- Kirk Mangus
- Lucien Koonce
- Randy Johnston
- Doug Jeppesen
- Asato Ikeda
- Emily Beck Yong
- Bryan Hopkins
- Jason Hess
- Perry Haas
- Kenyon Hansen
- Shoji Hamada
- Josh DeWeese

- Sam Chung
- Lisa Hammond
- Warren MacKenzie
- Akio Takamori
- Theaster Gates
- Ryan Mitchell
- Chris Gustin
- Maren Kloppmann
- Jun Kaneko
- Ryoji Koie
- David Shaner
- Trey Hill
- Richard Tuttle
- Sol LeWitt
- Agnes Martin
- Michael Simon
- Ann Hamilton
- Wes Mills
- Sally Mann
- Cy Twombly
- Don Reitz
- Akira Satake
- Adrian Arleo
- David Gilhooly
- Brad Miller
- Judy Moonelis
- Colin Pearson
- Paul Soldner
- Toshiko Takaezu
- Kathy Butterly
- Nancy Charak
- Anna Hepler
- Sergei Isupov
- John Ward
- Kiki Smith
- Aaron Scythe
- Zac Spates
- Robert Sperry
- Josef Albers
- Richard Diebenkorn
- Larry Bell
- Cornelia Hediger
- Robert Motherwell
- Alex Prager
- Dan Anderson
- Robert Mapplethorpe
- Toru Ichikawa
- Gerit Grimm
- Ursula Morley Price
- Philip Cornelius

- Robert Fornell
- Wayne Higby
- Furutani Michio
- Mary Rogers
- Kurt Weiser
- Mihara Ken
- Kanzaki Shiho
- Eugene Smith
- Michael Corney
- Michael Frimkess
- Magdalena Suarez Frimkess
- John Baldessari
- Yoichi Ohira
- Mary Anne "Toots" Zynsky
- Kerry James Marshall
- Chris Antemann
- David LaChapelle
- Takashi Murakami
- John Glick
- Robert Arneson
- Sunkoo Yuh
- David Hockney
- Purvis Young
- Nick Cave
- Satoru Hoshino
- Pablo Picasso
- Charles Arnoldi
- Ralph Bacerra
- John Balistreri
- Judy Chicago
- Sam Gilliam
- James Castle
- Suzuki Goro
- Hiroyuki Tomita
- Tom Friedman
- Nick Weddell
- Ben Beres
- Scott Parady
- Marlon Mullen
- Mose Tolliver
- Henry Taylor
- Pope.L
- Olga de Amaral
- Sheila Hicks
- Andy Warhol

Featured Works

- **Rudy Autio – "Icarus"**: A dynamic stoneware sculpture exemplifying Autio's expressive form and narrative style.
- **Ruth Duckworth – "Untitled Monumental Wall Sculpture"**: A significant porcelain and glazed stoneware piece showcasing Duckworth's modernist approach.

- **Ken Price – "Old Sparky"**: A vibrant acrylic on fired clay work reflecting Price's unique aesthetic.

Video Resources

- [The Nevica Project - A Contemporary Art Gallery](#)
- [Jay Strommen "Making Two Bowls" - The Nevica Project 2010 Part 2](#)

Direct Quotes

"The Nevica Project LLC is a contemporary fine art business representing artwork from the primary and secondary markets. We provide complete art services for individuals and design professionals, including acquisitions, appraisals, collection documentation, advisory services, fine art photography,

This page titled [19.7: Nevica Project](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

19.8: Leslie Ferrin Gallery

Leslie Ferrin

Leslie Ferrin is a prominent American art dealer, curator, and historian specializing in contemporary ceramics. She began her career as an artist studying ceramics and glass at Hampshire College in Amherst, Massachusetts. After graduating in 1979, she co-founded Pinch Pottery in Northampton, MA, with Mara Superior and Barbara Walch, which served as both a studio and gallery space. Ferrin's passion for ceramics led her to focus on the curatorial and sales aspects of the field, culminating in the establishment of Ferrin Gallery in 1987, which later evolved into Ferrin Contemporary.

Ferrin Contemporary

Founded in 2014, **Ferrin Contemporary** is located on the MASS MoCA campus in North Adams, Massachusetts. The gallery is renowned for its specialization in contemporary ceramics, representing a diverse roster of artists and organizing exhibitions that explore the intersections of art, craft, and design. Ferrin Contemporary also engages in collaborative projects with museums and cultural institutions, contributing to the broader discourse on ceramic art.

Notable Exhibitions

- **Are We There Yet?** (2023): An introspective exhibition marking Ferrin Contemporary's 40-year journey, featuring works by 20 artists and reflecting on the gallery's history and impact on the ceramics community. [Exhibition Details](#)
- **Our America/Whose America?** (2022): A dialogue between 22 contemporary artists and a collection of commercially produced ceramics, examining themes of race, gender, and class through the lens of historical ceramic objects. [Exhibition Details](#)
- **Melting Point** (2021): A collaborative exhibition with Heller Gallery, addressing climate change through the mediums of ceramic and glass. [Watch on YouTube](#)

Direct Quotes

"Throughout our forty-year history, we have used multi-artist survey exhibitions as a platform to explore social issues. We've focused on gender and feminist perspectives, broached relationship taboos, and challenged historical notions of ceramics and art." – Leslie Ferrin

"The role that we play is to connect artists with the public and create an opportunity for them to make new work through sales." – Leslie Ferrin

Online Presence

- [Ferrin Contemporary Official Website](#)
- [Ferrin Contemporary on Instagram](#)
- [Leslie Ferrin on Instagram](#)

Additional Resources

- [Article: Ceramics Gallerist Leslie Ferrin Tracks Her 40-Year Journey](#)
- [Video: Lunch & Learn: Lauren Mabry & Leslie Ferrin on Mentoring](#)

This page titled [19.8: Leslie Ferrin Gallery](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

19.9: Clay AKAR

ClayAKAR

ClayAKAR is a renowned gallery based in Iowa City, Iowa, dedicated to curating and showcasing the finest in studio ceramics. Founded by Sanjay and Jigna Jani, the gallery has become a pivotal platform for contemporary ceramic artists, offering a space where functional pottery meets artistic innovation.

Mission and Vision

ClayAKAR operates with the conviction that handmade ceramics—both beautiful and functional—can enhance the pleasures of daily life. The gallery represents artists and their creations with passion, excellence, and innovation, aiming to amplify the appreciation of pottery in modern living.

Notable Exhibitions

- **Yunomi Invitational:** An annual exhibition featuring a diverse collection of yunomi (Japanese teacups) by various artists, celebrating the fusion of tradition and contemporary design.
- **Solo and Group Shows:** Regularly hosts exhibitions that highlight both emerging and established ceramic artists, fostering a dynamic dialogue within the ceramics community.

Online Presence

- [Official Website](#)
- [YouTube Channel](#)
- [Instagram Profile](#)

Featured Video

[A Conversation with ClayAKAR:](#) An insightful interview with founders Sanjay and Jigna Jani discussing their journey in clay and the history of the Yunomi Invitational.

Direct Quote

"We curate the best of the studio ceramics—the art of pottery today—by representing artists and their creations with passion, excellence, and innovation."
— ClayAKAR

This page titled [19.9: Clay AKAR](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

19.10: Influence on the Ceramics and Art World

This page titled [19.10: Influence on the Ceramics and Art World](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

19.11: Jerry Saltz

Jerry Saltz

Jerry Saltz (born February 19, 1951) is an American art critic and author, renowned for his accessible and passionate commentary on contemporary art. He is the senior art critic for *New York Magazine* and its website Vulture.com. In 2018, he was awarded the Pulitzer Prize for Criticism for his work at *New York Magazine* ^[1].

Early Life and Career

Born in Oak Park, Illinois, Saltz attended the School of the Art Institute of Chicago but left before completing his degree. He moved to New York City in 1980, where he began his career in the art world. Before becoming a critic, he worked as a long-haul truck driver and a self-described "failed artist" ^[2].

Notable Works

- *Seeing Out Loud: The Village Voice Art Columns, 1998–2003* (2003)
- *Seeing Out Louder* (2009)
- *How to Be an Artist* (2020)
- *Art Is Life: Icons and Iconoclasts, Visionaries and Vigilantes, and Flashes of Hope in the Night* (2022)

Quotes

"Art is for anyone. It just isn't for everyone. Still, over the past decade, its audience has hugely grown, and that's irked those outside the art world."

— Jerry Saltz ^[3]

"Art is two parts agency and one part inner heat. The artist loves going down rabbit holes, working toward and against something at the same time."

— Jerry Saltz ^[4]

Perspectives on Ceramics and Pottery

While Jerry Saltz has not extensively written on ceramics, he has expressed appreciation for the medium. In an interview, he stated:

"I've never written on pottery yet I love it and some of the most important works of art of the twentieth century are pottery. Duchamp's Urinal is ceramic, so is Meret Oppenheim's fur-lined teacup, so are a lot of Jeff Koons sculptures."

— Jerry Saltz ^[5]

Additionally, Saltz has shared his fondness for everyday ceramics on social media, highlighting their aesthetic and cultural value ^[6].

Online Presence

- [Instagram](#)
- [X \(formerly Twitter\)](#)
- [Vulture Archive](#)

References

1. [Pulitzer Prize for Criticism](#)
2. [My Life As a Failed Artist](#)
3. [BrainyQuote: Jerry Saltz](#)
4. [Goodreads: Jerry Saltz Quotes](#)

5. [Interview with Irving Sandler](#)
6. [Instagram Post on Ceramics](#)

This page titled [19.11: Jerry Saltz](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

19.12: Roberta Smith

Roberta Smith

Roberta Smith (born 1948) is an esteemed American art critic and lecturer, renowned for her insightful and accessible critiques. She has served as co-chief art critic at *The New York Times*, becoming the first woman to hold that position. Smith's writings span a diverse array of visual arts, including contemporary, decorative, popular, outsider art, design, and architecture.

Early Life and Education

Born in New York City and raised in Lawrence, Kansas, Smith pursued her undergraduate studies at Grinnell College in Iowa. Her immersion into the art world began with a summer internship at the Corcoran Gallery of Art in Washington, D.C., in 1968. She further honed her expertise through the Whitney Museum's Independent Study Program, where she developed a lasting interest in minimal art and formed a professional relationship with artist Donald Judd.

Career Highlights

Smith's career in art criticism commenced in the early 1970s with contributions to *Artforum*, *Art in America*, and the *Village Voice*. In 1986, she joined *The New York Times*, where her critiques have been instrumental in shaping public discourse on art. Her writings are noted for their clarity, depth, and ability to demystify complex art concepts for a broader audience.

Engagement with Ceramics and Craft

Smith has been a vocal advocate for recognizing ceramics and craft within the fine arts sphere. In a 2009 article for *The New York Times*, she emphasized the rich history of ceramics, stating:

"Ceramic has one of the richest histories of any medium on the planet... It can't be said enough that the art-craft divide is a bogus concept regularly obliterated by the undeniable originality of individuals who may call themselves artists, designers or artisans."

Her reviews often highlight the significance of ceramic art, bringing attention to artists who challenge traditional boundaries between art and craft.

Notable Works and Contributions

- Extensive critiques and essays for *The New York Times* on contemporary art exhibitions and artists.
- Contributions to exhibition catalogs and monographs on artists such as Donald Judd, Alex Katz, Elizabeth Murray, and Cy Twombly.
- Recipient of the 2003 Frank Jewett Mather Award for Art Criticism from the College Art Association.

Selected Lectures and Interviews

- ["Guests and Gusto" with Roberta Smith – YouTube](#)
- [In Conversation: Roberta Smith with Irving Sandler – The Brooklyn Rail](#)
- [Profile: Roberta Smith – American Academy in Berlin](#)

Personal Life

Roberta Smith is married to Jerry Saltz, senior art critic for *New York Magazine*. The couple resides in Greenwich Village, New York City, and are prominent figures in the art criticism community.

This page titled [19.12: Roberta Smith](#) is shared under a [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Jessica Fong](#).

Index

D

dire

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: [Ceramics](#)

Webpages: 197

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#): 99% (195 pages)
- [Undeclared](#): 1% (2 pages)

By Page

- [Ceramics](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [Front Matter](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [TitlePage](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [InfoPage](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [Table of Contents](#) - [Undeclared](#)
 - [Licensing](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1: Introduction](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1: World of Ceramics](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1: Asia](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.1: East Asia](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.1.1: China](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.1.2: Japan](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.1.3: Korea](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.2: Southeast Asia](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.2.1: Vietnam](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.2.2: Thailand](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.3: South Asia](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.3.1: India](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.3.2: Pakistan](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.4: Central Asia](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.4.1: Uzbekistan](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.5: Middle East / West Asia](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.5.1: Iran](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.5.2: Iraq](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.5.3: Turkey](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.5.4: Syria](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.5.5: Lebanon](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.2: North America](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.2.1: Miwok](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.2.2: Mimbire](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.3: South America](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.3.1: Colima](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.3.2: Peru](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.3.3: Olemec](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.4: Western Europe](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.4.1: Celtic](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.4.2: United Kingdom](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.4.2.1: Prehistoric](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.4.3: Vienna / Austria](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.5: Northern Europe](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.6: Eastern Europe](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.7: Southern Europe](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.7.1: Etruscan](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.8: North Africa](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.8.1: Egypt](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.9: Africa](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.9.1: Kongo](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.10: Australia/ New Zealand](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.2: Evolution of Ceramic Techniques](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.3: Ceramics and Cultural Identity](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.4: Contemporary Ceramic Art](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
- [2: Studio Foundation](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [2.1: Setting Up Your Studio Space](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [2.2: Essential Tools and Their Uses](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [2.3: Health and Safety in the Ceramic Studio](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [2.4: Understanding Kilns- Types and Uses](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [2.5: Troubleshooting](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
- [3: Clay The Ceramic Medium](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)

- 3.1: Types of Clay and Their Properties - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 3.2: Preparing and Recycling Clay - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 3.3: The Science of Clay- From Plasticity to Vitreousness - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 3.4: Storing and Reclaiming Clay - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 3.5: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 4: Hand-Building Skills - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 4.1: Pinching- The Most Ancient Technique - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 4.2: Coil Construction- Pottery and Sculpture - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 4.3: Slab Techniques- Functional and Sculptural Forms - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 4.4: Advanced Hand-building Techniques - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 4.5: Texturing and Surface Embellishment - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 5: The Potter's Wheel - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 5.1: Introduction to the Wheel - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 5.2: Centering- The Foundation of Wheel Throwing - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 5.3: Creating Basic Forms- Cylinders, Bowls, Plates - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 5.4: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 6: Advanced Forms on the Wheel - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 6.1: Advanced Forms- Lidded Containers, Teapots, Vases - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 7: Surface Design Techniques - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 7.1: Engobes and Slip Decoration - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 7.1.1: Underglazes - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 7.1.2: Oxides and Stains - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 7.2: Carving and Incising - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 7.3: Glaze Application Techniques - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 7.4: Using Wax Resist and Other Masking Techniques - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 7.5: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 8: Understanding Glazes - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 8.1: Introduction to Glaze Chemistry - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 8.1.1: Glazy.org - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 8.1.2: Glaze Logbook - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 8.2: Glaze Characteristics and Types - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 8.3: Triaxial Glaze Testing - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 8.4: Formulating Glazes for Specific Effects - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 8.5: Making and Using Glaze Test Tiles - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 8.6: Keeping a Kiln Log - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 8.7: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 9: The Firing Process - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 9.1: Overview of Kiln Firing - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 9.2: Bisque Firing- Purpose and Process - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 9.3: Glaze Firing- Understanding Temperatures and Atmospheres - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 9.3.1: Reduction - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 9.4: Special Firing Techniques- Pit, Salt, and Wood Firing - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 9.5: Types of Kilns and Locations - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 9.6: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 10: Design and Aesthetics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 10.1: Principles of Ceramic Design - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 10.2: Color in Ceramics- Glazes and Stains - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 10.3: Texture and Pattern in Design - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 10.4: The Critique Process- Evaluating Your Work - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 10.5: Signing Your Work - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 10.6: Life-Long Learning - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 10.6.1: Physical Health - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 10.6.2: Cognitive Skills - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 10.7: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 11: The Professional Ceramic Artist - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 11.1: Documenting and Photographing Ceramics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 11.2: Strategies for Selling Your Work - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 11.3: Writing an Effective Artist Statement - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 11.4: Networking and Building Your Presence in the Ceramic Community - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 11.5: Residencies and Educational Opportunities - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 11.5.1: Notable Ceramics-Related Residencies in the US - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 11.5.2: Notable International Ceramics-Related Residencies - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 11.5.3: New Page - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0

- 12: Digital Technologies in Ceramic Art - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 12.1: Designing with CAD and Rhino for Ceramics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 12.2: 3D Printing with Clay Extrusions - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 12.3: Integrating Digital Fabrication Techniques - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 12.4: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 13: Advanced Sculptural Techniques in Ceramics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 13.1: Sculpting with Paper Clay - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 13.2: Using Soft Armatures in Ceramic Sculpture - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 13.3: Incorporating Hard Armatures - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 13.4: Tar Paper Form Templates - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 13.5: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 14: Ceramics in Environmental and Humanitarian Solutions - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 14.1: Ceramic Water Filtration Systems - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 14.2: The Resurgence of Olla Water Vessels - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 14.3: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 15: Innovative Uses of Ceramics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 15.1: Ceramics in Modern Technology and Industry - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 15.2: Sustainable and Eco-Friendly Ceramic Practices - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 15.3: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 16: Beyond the Studio - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 16.1: Ceramics in Education- Teaching and Workshops - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 16.2: Ceramics in the Digital Age- Online Communities and Resources - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 16.3: Sustainability in Ceramics- Practices and Considerations - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 16.4: The Future of Ceramics- Trends and Innovations - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 16.5: Challenges - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 17: The Craft and Regional Ceramics Movements After 1920 - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.1: The Evolution of the Craft Movement - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.2: Regional Ceramics Movements - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.3: Brutalism and Ceramics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.3.1: Introduction to Contemporary Ceramics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.3.2: Legacy and Influence - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.3.2.1: Influence on Ceramics and the Art World - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.3.3: Mingei Movement and Its Principles - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.3.3.1: Influence on Western Ceramics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.3.3.2: Legacy and Influence - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 17.4: Women in Contemporary Ceramics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.4.1: Impact on Women Artists and the Ceramics Field - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 18: Artists and Craftspeople - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.1: Online Platforms - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.2: Adam Field - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.3: Kate Malone - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.4: Ayumi Horie - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.5: The Haas Brothers (Simon and Nikolai Haas) - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.6: Ben Carter - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.7: Julia Galloway - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.8: Jessica Putnam-Phillips - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.9: Grayson Perry - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.10: Roberto Lugo - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.11: Chris Staley - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.12: Molly Hatch - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.13: Chris Casey - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.14: Forrest Lesch-Middelton - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.15: Lindsay Oesterritter - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.16: Tim See - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.17: Sean O'Connell - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.18: Lauren Sandler - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.19: Naomi Clement - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.20: Jen Allen - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 19: Curators, Critics, and Collectors Impact - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 19.1: Access and Representation - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 19.2: Garth Clark - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 19.3: Mark Delvecchio - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 19.4: Peter Held - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 19.5: Garth Johnson - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 19.6: Ulysses Grant Dietz - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 19.7: Nevica Project - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 19.8: Leslie Ferrin Gallery - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 19.9: Clay AKAR - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0

- [19.10: Influence on the Ceramics and Art World](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
- [19.11: Jerry Saltz](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
- [19.12: Roberta Smith](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
- [Back Matter](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
- [Index](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
- [Glossary](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
- [Detailed Licensing](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
- [Detailed Licensing](#) - [Undeclared](#)

Detailed Licensing

Overview

Title: [Ceramics](#)

Webpages: 197

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#): 99% (195 pages)
- [Undeclared](#): 1% (2 pages)

By Page

- [Ceramics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [Front Matter - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [TitlePage - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [InfoPage - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [Table of Contents - Undeclared](#)
 - [Licensing - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1: Introduction - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1: World of Ceramics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1: Asia - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.1: East Asia - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.1.1: China - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.1.2: Japan - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.1.3: Korea - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.2: Southeast Asia - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.2.1: Vietnam - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.2.2: Thailand - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.3: South Asia - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.3.1: India - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.3.2: Pakistan - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.4: Central Asia - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.4.1: Uzbekistan - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.5: Middle East / West Asia - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.5.1: Iran - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.5.2: Iraq - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.5.3: Turkey - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.5.4: Syria - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.1.5.5: Lebanon - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.2: North America - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.2.1: Miwok - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.2.2: Mimbire - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.3: South America - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.3.1: Colima - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.3.2: Peru - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.3.3: Olemec - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.4: Western Europe - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.4.1: Celtic - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.4.2: United Kingdom - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.4.2.1: Prehistoric - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.4.3: Vienna / Austria - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.5: Northern Europe - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.6: Eastern Europe - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.7: Southern Europe - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.7.1: Etruscan - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.8: North Africa - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.8.1: Egypt - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.9: Africa - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.9.1: Kongo - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [1.1.10: Australia/ New Zealand - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [2: Studio Foundation - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [2.1: Setting Up Your Studio Space - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [2.2: Essential Tools and Their Uses - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [2.3: Health and Safety in the Ceramic Studio - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [2.4: Understanding Kilns- Types and Uses - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [2.5: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
 - [3: Clay The Ceramic Medium - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)

- 3.1: Types of Clay and Their Properties - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 3.2: Preparing and Recycling Clay - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 3.3: The Science of Clay- From Plasticity to Vitreousness - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 3.4: Storing and Reclaiming Clay - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 3.5: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 4: Hand-Building Skills - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 4.1: Pinching- The Most Ancient Technique - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 4.2: Coil Construction- Pottery and Sculpture - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 4.3: Slab Techniques- Functional and Sculptural Forms - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 4.4: Advanced Hand-building Techniques - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 4.5: Texturing and Surface Embellishment - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 5: The Potter's Wheel - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 5.1: Introduction to the Wheel - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 5.2: Centering- The Foundation of Wheel Throwing - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 5.3: Creating Basic Forms- Cylinders, Bowls, Plates - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 5.4: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 6: Advanced Forms on the Wheel - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 6.1: Advanced Forms- Lidded Containers, Teapots, Vases - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 7: Surface Design Techniques - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 7.1: Engobes and Slip Decoration - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 7.1.1: Underglazes - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 7.1.2: Oxides and Stains - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 7.2: Carving and Incising - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 7.3: Glaze Application Techniques - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 7.4: Using Wax Resist and Other Masking Techniques - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 7.5: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 8: Understanding Glazes - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 8.1: Introduction to Glaze Chemistry - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 8.1.1: Glazy.org - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 8.1.2: Glaze Logbook - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 8.2: Glaze Characteristics and Types - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 8.3: Triaxial Glaze Testing - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 8.4: Formulating Glazes for Specific Effects - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 8.5: Making and Using Glaze Test Tiles - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 8.6: Keeping a Kiln Log - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 8.7: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 9: The Firing Process - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 9.1: Overview of Kiln Firing - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 9.2: Bisque Firing- Purpose and Process - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 9.3: Glaze Firing- Understanding Temperatures and Atmospheres - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 9.3.1: Reduction - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 9.4: Special Firing Techniques- Pit, Salt, and Wood Firing - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 9.5: Types of Kilns and Locations - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 9.6: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 10: Design and Aesthetics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 10.1: Principles of Ceramic Design - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 10.2: Color in Ceramics- Glazes and Stains - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 10.3: Texture and Pattern in Design - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 10.4: The Critique Process- Evaluating Your Work - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 10.5: Signing Your Work - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 10.6: Life-Long Learning - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 10.6.1: Physical Health - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 10.6.2: Cognitive Skills - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 10.7: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 11: The Professional Ceramic Artist - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 11.1: Documenting and Photographing Ceramics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 11.2: Strategies for Selling Your Work - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 11.3: Writing an Effective Artist Statement - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 11.4: Networking and Building Your Presence in the Ceramic Community - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 11.5: Residencies and Educational Opportunities - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 11.5.1: Notable Ceramics-Related Residencies in the US - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 11.5.2: Notable International Ceramics-Related Residencies - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 11.5.3: New Page - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0

- 12: Digital Technologies in Ceramic Art - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 12.1: Designing with CAD and Rhino for Ceramics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 12.2: 3D Printing with Clay Extrusions - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 12.3: Integrating Digital Fabrication Techniques - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 12.4: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 13: Advanced Sculptural Techniques in Ceramics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 13.1: Sculpting with Paper Clay - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 13.2: Using Soft Armatures in Ceramic Sculpture - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 13.3: Incorporating Hard Armatures - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 13.4: Tar Paper Form Templates - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 13.5: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 14: Ceramics in Environmental and Humanitarian Solutions - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 14.1: Ceramic Water Filtration Systems - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 14.2: The Resurgence of Olla Water Vessels - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 14.3: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 15: Innovative Uses of Ceramics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 15.1: Ceramics in Modern Technology and Industry - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 15.2: Sustainable and Eco-Friendly Ceramic Practices - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 15.3: Troubleshooting - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 16: Beyond the Studio - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 16.1: Ceramics in Education- Teaching and Workshops - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 16.2: Ceramics in the Digital Age- Online Communities and Resources - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 16.3: Sustainability in Ceramics- Practices and Considerations - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 16.4: The Future of Ceramics- Trends and Innovations - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 16.5: Challenges - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 17: The Craft and Regional Ceramics Movements After 1920 - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.1: The Evolution of the Craft Movement - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.2: Regional Ceramics Movements - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.3: Brutalism and Ceramics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.3.1: Introduction to Contemporary Ceramics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.3.2: Legacy and Influence - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.3.2.1: Influence on Ceramics and the Art World - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.3.3: Mingei Movement and Its Principles - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.3.3.1: Influence on Western Ceramics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.3.3.2: Legacy and Influence - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 17.4: Women in Contemporary Ceramics - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 17.4.1: Impact on Women Artists and the Ceramics Field - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 18: Artists and Craftspeople - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.1: Online Platforms - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.2: Adam Field - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.3: Kate Malone - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.4: Ayumi Horie - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.5: The Haas Brothers (Simon and Nikolai Haas) - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.6: Ben Carter - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.7: Julia Galloway - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.8: Jessica Putnam-Phillips - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.9: Grayson Perry - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.10: Roberto Lugo - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.11: Chris Staley - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.12: Molly Hatch - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.13: Chris Casey - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.14: Forrest Lesch-Middelton - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.15: Lindsay Oesterritter - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.16: Tim See - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.17: Sean O'Connell - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.18: Lauren Sandler - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.19: Naomi Clement - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 18.20: Jen Allen - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
- 19: Curators, Critics, and Collectors Impact - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 19.1: Access and Representation - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 19.2: Garth Clark - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 19.3: Mark Delvecchio - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 19.4: Peter Held - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 19.5: Garth Johnson - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 19.6: Ulysses Grant Dietz - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 19.7: Nevica Project - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 19.8: Leslie Ferrin Gallery - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0
 - 19.9: Clay AKAR - CC BY-NC-SA 1.0

- [19.10: Influence on the Ceramics and Art World](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
- [19.11: Jerry Saltz](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
- [19.12: Roberta Smith](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
- [Back Matter](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
- [Index](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
- [Glossary](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
- [Detailed Licensing](#) - [CC BY-NC-SA 1.0](#)
- [Detailed Licensing](#) - [Undeclared](#)